

## FOREWORD

— 10 —

I am indebted to my two nephews, namely B. C. Kumar Sen, B Sc, and Dhires Kumar Sen for the production of this Solution. Half the credit is theirs and half is mine. On the strictly correct, I may say with the best, more than half to the two boys among

Allahabad }  
The 29th Nov, 1910. } J. N. Sen.

# SOLUTION OF EXERCISES

IN

## HALL & STEVEN'S GEOMETRY, PART I.

Page 13.

1. We know from definition

When the sum of two angles is two right angles or  $180^\circ$ , each of two angles is said to be supplement of the other.

Hence,

Supplement of one-half of a right angle is 2 rt.  $\angle^s - \frac{1}{2}$  rt.  $\angle^s$ , or  $\frac{3}{2}$  rt.  $\angle^s$ , or three-halves of a right angle, or  $\frac{3}{2} \times 90^\circ$ ,  $135^\circ$ .

Supplement of four-thirds of a right angle is 2 rt.  $\angle^s - \frac{4}{3}$  rt.  $\angle^s$ , or  $\frac{2}{3}$  rt.  $\angle^s$ , or two-thirds of a right angle, or  $\frac{2}{3} \times 90^\circ$ , or  $60^\circ$ .

Supplement of  $46^\circ$  is  $180^\circ - 46^\circ$ , or  $134^\circ$ .

Supplement of  $149^\circ$  is  $180^\circ - 149^\circ$ , or  $31^\circ$ .

Supplement of  $83^\circ$  is  $180^\circ - 83^\circ$ , or  $97^\circ$ .

Supplement of  $101^\circ. 15'$  is  $180^\circ - 101^\circ. 15'$ , or  $78^\circ. 45'$ .

2. We know from definition

When the sum of two angles is one right angle or  $90^\circ$ , each of two angles is said to be complement of the other.

Hence,

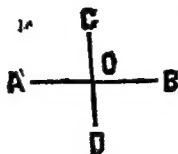
Complement of two-fifths of a right angle is 1 rt.  $\angle - \frac{2}{5}$  rt.  $\angle$ , or  $\frac{3}{5}$  rt.  $\angle$ , or three fifths of a right angle, or  $\frac{3}{5} \times 90^\circ$ ,  $54^\circ$ .

Complement of  $27^\circ$  is  $90^\circ - 27^\circ$ , or  $63^\circ$ .

Complement of  $38^\circ. 16'$  is  $90^\circ - 38^\circ. 16'$ , or  $51^\circ. 44'$ .

Complement of  $41^\circ. 29'. 30''$  is  $90^\circ - 41^\circ. 29'. 30''$ , or  $48^\circ. 30''$ .

3. Let  $AB, CD$  be any two straight lines intersecting at  $O$ , and let  $\angle AOC$  be a right angle.



It is required to prove that the other three angles  $\angle COB$ ,  $\angle BOD$  and  $\angle AOD$  are also right angles

Proof — Because  $OC$  stands on the straight line  $AB$  at  $O$ ,

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s \angle AOC$  and  $\angle COB$  are together equal to  $2 \text{ rt. } \angle^s$ ;  
(Theor. 1)

But the  $\angle AOC$  is given a  $\text{rt. } \angle$ .

Hence, the  $\angle COB$  is also a  $\text{rt. } \angle$ .

Again because  $AO$  stands on the straight line  $DC$  at  $O$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s \angle AOC$  and  $\angle AOD$  are together equal to  $2 \text{ rt. } \angle^s$ .  
(Theor. 1)

But the  $\angle AOC$  is given a  $\text{rt. } \angle$

Hence, the  $\angle AOD$  is also a  $\text{rt. } \angle$ .

Again because  $DO$  stands on the straight line  $AB$  at  $O$ ,

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s \angle AOD$  and  $\angle DOB$  are together equal to  $2 \text{ rt. } \angle^s$ .  
(Theor. 1)

But the  $\angle AOD$  is proved to be a  $\text{rt. } \angle$ .

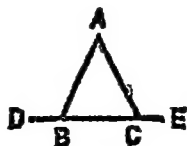
Hence, the  $\angle DOB$  is also a  $\text{rt. } \angle$ .

$\therefore$  each of the three angles  $\angle COB$ ,  $\angle AOD$  and  $\angle DOB$  is a  $\text{rt. } \angle$ .  
Q. E. D

4. Let  $ABC$  be a triangle in which the angles  $\angle ABC$  and  $\angle ACB$  are given equal

produced both ways to the  
shown in the diagram.

The side  $BC$  is pro-  
duced to points  $D$  and  $E$ , as



It is required to prove that the angles  $ABD$  and  $ACE$  equal.

Proof.—Because  $AB$  stands on  $DE$  at  $B$ ,

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s$   $ABD$  and  $ABC$  are together equal to two right angles. (Theor. 1)

Also because  $AC$  stands on  $DE$  at  $C$ ,

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s$   $ACE$  and  $ACB$  are together equal to two right angles. (Theor. 1)

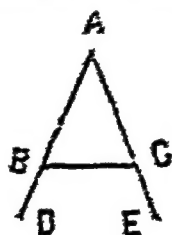
$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s$   $ABD$  and  $ABC$  together = the  $\angle^s$   $ACE$  and  $CB$  together.

But the  $\angle$   $ABC$  = the  $\angle$   $ACB$  (by hypothesis)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle$   $ABD$  = the  $\angle$   $ACE$ .

Q. E. D.

5. Let  $ABC$  be a triangle in which the angles  $ABC$  and  $ACB$  are given equal. The side  $AB$  is produced beyond  $B$  to any point  $D$  and  $AC$  is produced beyond  $C$  to any point  $E$ .



It is required to prove that the angles  $BCE$  and  $CBD$  are equal.

Proof.—Because  $BC$  stands on  $AD$  at  $B$ ,

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s$   $ABC$  and  $CBD$  are together equal to two right angles. (Theor. 1)

Again because  $BC$  stands on  $AE$  at  $C$ ,

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s$   $ACB$  and  $BCE$  are together equal to two right angles. (Theor. 1)

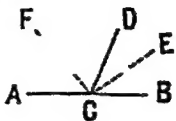
$\therefore$  the  $\angle$   $ABC$  and  $CBD$  together = the  $\angle^s$   $ACB$  and  $BCE$  together.

But the  $\angle ACB = \text{the } \angle ABC$  (by hypothesis)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle CBD = \text{the } \angle BCE$ .

Q. E. D.

6 Let the straight line  $CD$  stand on another straight line  $AB$  at  $C$  making the adjacent angles  $BCD$  and  $DCA$ .  $CE$  bisects the angle  $DCB$  and  $CF$  bisects the angle  $DCA$ .



It is required to prove that the angle  $FCE$  is a right angle.

Proof.—Because  $CD$  stands on  $AB$  at  $C$ ,

$\therefore$  the  $\angle BCD$  and the  $\angle ACD$  together  $= 2 \text{ rt } \angle^s$

(Theor. 1)

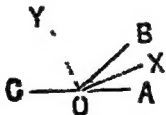
$\therefore \frac{1}{2}$  the  $\angle BCD$  and  $\frac{1}{2}$  the  $\angle ACD$  together  $= \text{one rt } \angle$ .

But the  $\angle DCE$  is half of the  $\angle BCD$  and the  $\angle DCF$  is half of the  $\angle ACD$  (by hypothesis)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle DCE$  and the  $\angle DCF$  together  $= \text{one rt } \angle$   
 i.e., the  $\angle FCE$  is a rt.  $\angle$ .

Q. E. D.

7. Let the straight line  $BO$  stand on  $AC$  at  $O$  making the adjacent angles  $BOA$  and  $BOC$ .  $OX$  is bisector of the angle  $BOA$  and  $OY$  is bisector of the angle  $BOC$ .



It is required to prove that the  $\angle AOX$  and  $COY$  are complementary.

Proof.—Because  $OB$  stands on  $CA$  at  $O$ ,

$\therefore$  the  $\angle BOA$  and the  $\angle BOC$  together  $= 2 \text{ rt. } \angle^s$

(Theor. 1)

$\therefore \frac{1}{2}$  the  $\angle BOA$  and  $\frac{1}{2}$  the  $\angle BOC = \text{one rt. } \angle$ .

But the  $\angle AOX$  is half of the  $\angle BOA$  and the  $\angle COY$  half of the  $\angle BOC$  (by hypothesis)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle AOX$  and the  $\angle COY$  together = one rt.  $\angle$   
 $\therefore$  the  $\angle^s AOX$  and  $COY$  are complementary. (from definition)

Q. E. D.

8. (See fig. in Ex. 7)

Let  $BO$  stand on the straight line  $AC$  at  $O$  making the adjacent angles  $BOA$  and  $BOC$ .  $OX$  is bisector of the angle  $AOB$  and  $OY$  is bisector of the angle  $BOC$ .

It is required to prove that the angles  $BOX$  and  $COX$  are supplementary, and also that the angles  $AOY$  and  $BOY$  are supplementary.

Proof.—Because  $OX$  stands on  $AC$ ,

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s AOX$  and  $XOC$  are together equal to two right angles. (Theor. 1)

But the  $\angle AOX = \text{the } \angle BOX$  (by hypothesis)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s BOX$  and  $XOC$  together = 2 rt.  $\angle^s$

i.e., the  $\angle^s BOX$  and  $COX$  are supplementary (from definition)

Again because  $OY$  stands on  $CA$ ,

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s COY$  and  $YOA$  together = 2 rt.  $\angle^s$  (Theor. 1)

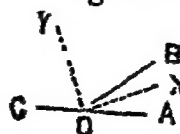
But the  $\angle COY = \text{the } \angle BOY$  (by hypothesis)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s BOY$  and  $YOA$  together = 2 rt.  $\angle^s$

i.e., the  $\angle^s BOY$  and  $AOY$  are supplementary.

Q. E. D.

9. Let  $BO$  stand on the straight line  $AC$  at  $O$  making the adjacent angles  $BOA$  and  $BOC$ .  $OX$  is bisector of the angle  $AOB$  and  $OY$  is bisector of the angle  $BOC$ .



Let the angle  $\text{AOB}$  be  $35^\circ$ .

It is required to find the angle  $\text{COY}$ .

Because  $\text{BO}$  stands on  $\text{CA}$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s \text{BOC}$  and  $\text{BOA}$  together  $= 2 \text{ rt. } \angle^s$  (Theor. 1)

And because the  $\angle \text{AOB} = 35^\circ$ ,

$\therefore$  the  $\angle \text{BOC} = 180^\circ - 35^\circ = 145^\circ$ .

But the angle  $\text{COY}$  is half of the  $\angle \text{BOC}$  (by hypothesis)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle \text{COY} = \frac{1}{2}$  of  $145^\circ = 72^\circ, 30'$ .

Page 15.

1. Since the minute-hand of a clock makes one complete revolution in one hour or 60 minutes, it turns through  $4 \text{ rt. } \angle^s$  in 60 minutes



$\therefore$  in 60 minutes the minute-hand turns through  $360^\circ$ .

$\therefore$  in one minute the minute-hand will turn through  $\frac{360^\circ}{60}$ , or  $6^\circ$ .

(i)  $\therefore$  in 5 minutes the minute-hand will turn through  $6^\circ \times 5$ , or  $30^\circ$ .

(ii) in 21 minutes the minute-hand will turn through  $6^\circ \times 21$ , or  $126^\circ$ .

(iii) in  $48\frac{1}{2}$  minutes or  $\frac{97}{2}$  minutes the minute-hand will turn through  $6^\circ \times \frac{97}{2}$ , or  $291^\circ$ .

(iv) in 14 minutes 10 seconds or  $\frac{85}{6}$  minutes the minute-hand will turn through  $6^\circ \times \frac{85}{6}$ , or  $85^\circ$ .

The minute-hand turns through  $6^\circ$  in one minute.

(v) the minute hand will turn through  $66^\circ$  in  $\frac{11}{6}$  minutes, or 11 minutes.

(vi) the minute-hand will turn through  $222^\circ$  in  $\frac{37}{3}$  minutes, or 37 minutes.

2. (See fig. in Ex. 1.)

Since, the hour-hand of a clock makes one complete revolution in 12 hours, it turns through 4 rt.  $\angle^s$  in 12 hours.

i. e. in 12 hours the hour-hand turns through  $360^\circ$ .

$\therefore$  in 1 hour the hour-hand will turn through  $\frac{360^\circ}{12}$ , or  $30^\circ$ .

(i)  $\therefore$  in 3 hours 45 minutes, or  $\frac{7}{4}$  hours, the hour-hand will turn through  $30^\circ \times \frac{7}{4}$ , or  $52\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ , or  $112^\circ 30'$ .

(ii) in 5 hours 10 minutes or  $\frac{11}{6}$  hours the hour-hand will turn through  $30^\circ \times \frac{11}{6}$ , or  $155^\circ$ .

The time taken by the hour-hand in turning through  $30^\circ$  is one hour.

$\therefore$  the time taken by the hour-hand in turning through  $\frac{345^\circ}{2}$ , or  $\frac{345^\circ}{2}$  will be  $\frac{2}{30^\circ}$ , or  $\frac{345}{2 \times 30}$  hours, or  $\frac{23}{4}$  hours, or 5 hours 45 minutes

3. Since the earth makes one complete revolution in 24 hours about its axis, it turns through 4 rt.  $\angle^s$  in 24 hrs.

i. e. in 24 hours the earth turns through  $360^\circ$ .

$\therefore$  in one hour the earth will turn through  $\frac{360^\circ}{24}$ , or  $15^\circ$ .

(i)  $\therefore$  in 3 hours 20 minutes, or  $\frac{10}{3}$  hours the earth will turn through  $15^\circ \times \frac{10}{3}$ , or  $50^\circ$ .

The time taken by the earth in turning through  $15^\circ$  is one hour.

(ii)  $\therefore$  the time taken by the earth in turning through  $130^\circ$  will be  $\frac{130^\circ}{15^\circ}$ , or  $\frac{26}{3}$  hours, or 8 hours 40 minutes.

4. Let the straight lines AB and AD cut one another at the point O.



(i) If the angle AOC be  $35^\circ$ , it is required to find the value of each of the angles COB, BOD, DOA without measurement.



Because the straight line  $CO$  stands on  $AB$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s AOC$  and  $COB$  together  $= 2$  rt.  $\angle^s$ , or  $180^\circ$ .  
(Theor. 1).

But the  $\angle AOC = 35^\circ$  (given)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle COB = 180^\circ - 35^\circ$ , or  $145^\circ$ .

Because  $AB$  and  $CD$  cut one another at  $O$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle COB =$  the vertically opposite  $\angle DOA$   
(Theor. 3)

But, the  $\angle COB = 145^\circ$  (proved)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle DOA = 145^\circ$ .

Also, the  $\angle AOC =$  the vertically opposite  $\angle BOD$   
(Theor. 3)

But the  $\angle AOC = 35^\circ$  (given)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle BOD = 35^\circ$

(ii) If the  $\angle^s COB$  and  $AOD$  together be  $250^\circ$ , it is required to find each of the  $\angle^s COA$ ,  $BOD$ .

Because  $AB$  and  $CD$  cut one another at  $O$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s AOC$ ,  $COB$ ,  $BOD$  and  $DOA$  together  $= 4$  rt.  $\angle^s$ , or  $360^\circ$ . (Cor. 1 Theor. 1)

But the  $\angle^s BOB$  and  $AOD$  together  $= 250^\circ$  (given)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s COA$  and  $BOD$  together  $= 360^\circ - 250^\circ$ , or  $110^\circ$ .

But the  $\angle AOC =$  vertically opposite  $\angle BOD$  (Theor. 3)

$\therefore$  each of the  $\angle^s AOC$ ,  $BOD = \frac{1}{2}$  of  $110^\circ$ , or  $55^\circ$ .

(iii) If the  $\angle^s AOC$ ,  $COB$ ,  $BOD$  together make up  $274^\circ$ , it is required to find each of the  $\angle^s AOC$ ,  $COB$ ,  $BOD$ ,  $DOA$ .

Because  $CO$  stands on  $AB$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s$  AOC and COB together = 2 rt.  $\angle^s$ , or  $180^\circ$   
(Theor. 1)

But the  $\angle^s$  AOC, COB, BOD together =  $274^\circ$  (given)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle$  BOD =  $274^\circ - 180^\circ$ , or  $94^\circ$ .

Because DO stands on AB

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s$  BOD and DOA together = 2 rt.  $\angle^s$ , or  $180^\circ$   
(Theor. 1)

But the  $\angle$  BOD =  $94^\circ$  (proved)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle$  DOA =  $180^\circ - 94^\circ$ , or  $86^\circ$ .

Because AB and CD cut one another at O

$\therefore$  the  $\angle$  AOC = vertically opposite  $\angle$  BOD (Theor. 3)

But the  $\angle$  BOD =  $94^\circ$  (proved)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle$  BOC =  $94^\circ$

Also the  $\angle$  BOC = vertically opposite  $\angle$  AOD (Theor. 3)

But the  $\angle$  DOA =  $86^\circ$  (proved)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle$  AOC =  $86^\circ$ .

5. (See fig. in Ex 4).

Let AB be a straight line and let O be any point in it from which two straight lines OC and OD are drawn on opposite sides of AB such that the angles COB and AOD are equal.

It is required to prove that OC and OD are in the same straight line.

Proof.—Because OC stands on AB

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s$  AOC and COB together = 2 rt.  $\angle^s$  (Theor. 1)

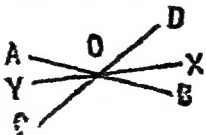
But the  $\angle$  COB = the  $\angle$  AOD (by hypothesis)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s$  AOC and AOD together = 2 rt.  $\angle^s$

$\therefore$  OC and OD are in the same straight line (Theor. 2)

Q. E. D.

6. Let two straight lines AB, CD cross one another at O, and let OX be the bisector of the angle BOD. Produce XO beyond O to any point Y.



It is required to prove that  $OY$  bisects the angle  $AOC$ .

Proof—Because  $AB$  and  $YX$  cut at  $O$ .

$\therefore$  the  $\angle BOX =$  vertically opposite  $\angle A O Y$  (Theor. 3)

Again because  $CD$  and  $YX$  cut at  $O$ .

$\therefore$  the  $\angle COY =$  vertically opposite  $\angle DOX$  (Theor. 3)

But the  $\angle DOX =$  the  $\angle BOX$  (by hypothesis)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle A O Y =$  the  $\angle COY$ .

$\therefore$  the  $\angle AOC$  is bisected by  $OY$ .

Q. E. D.

7. (See fig. in Ex. 6)

Let two straight lines  $AB$   $CD$  intersect at  $O$ , let  $OX$  be the bisector of the angle  $BOD$ , and  $OY$  the bisector of the  $\angle AOC$ .

It is required to prove that  $OX$  and  $OY$  are in the same straight line.

Proof—Because  $AB$  and  $CD$  cut at  $O$ .

$\therefore$  the  $\angle AOC =$  vertically opposite  $\angle BOD$  (Theor. 3)

But the  $\angle AOY =$  the  $\angle COY$  (by hypothesis)  $= \frac{1}{2}$  the  $\angle AOC$ .

Also, the  $\angle BOX =$  the  $\angle DOX$  (by hypothesis)  $= \frac{1}{2}$  the  $\angle BOD$ .

But the  $\angle AOC =$  the  $\angle BOD$  (proved)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle AOY =$  the  $\angle BOX$ .

Because  $OX$  stands on  $AB$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s BOX$  and  $XOA$  together  $= 2$  rt  $\angle^s$

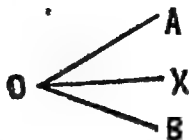
(Theor. 1)

But the  $\angle BOX =$  the  $\angle AOY$  (proved)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s AOY$  and  $XOA$  together  $= 2$  rt.  $\angle^s$

$\therefore$  OX and OY are in the same straight line. (Theor. 2)  
Q. E. D.

8. Let AOB be a given angle and let OX be the bisector of the angle AOB.



It is required to show that, by folding the diagram about OX, OA may be made to coincide with OB.

In folding the diagram about OX we make the  $\angle$  AOX fall upon the  $\angle$  BOX.

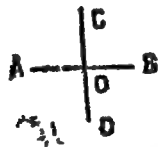
But the  $\angle$  AOX = the  $\angle$  BOX (by hypothesis)

$\therefore$  OA will fall upon OB.

(i) If the  $\angle$  AOX is greater than the  $\angle$  XOB, OA will fall outside the  $\angle$  XOB with regard to OB, so that OX and OA will be on opposite sides of OB.

(ii) If the  $\angle$  AOX is less than the  $\angle$  XOB, OA will fall within the  $\angle$  XOB with regard to OB, so that OX and OA will be on the same side of OB.

9. Let AB and CD cut one another at right angles at O.



It is required to show that, by folding the figure about AB, OC may be made to fall along OD.

In folding the figure about AB, we make the straight angle on the left side of AB fall on the straight angle on the right side of AB.

But the  $\angle$  AOC = the  $\angle$  AOD (being rt.  $\angle$ s)

$\therefore$  OC will fall along OD.

10 (See fig in Ex. 9.)

Let AB be a straight line drawn on paper and let O be any point in it about which the straight line AB is so folded that OA falls along OB. Let COD be the crease left on the paper

It is required to prove that COD is perpendicular to AB.

Proof.—Because the  $\angle AOC$  falls upon the  $\angle COB$  such that OA falls along OB.

$\therefore$  the  $\angle AOC =$  the  $\angle COB$ .

But these are adjacent angles.

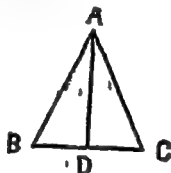
$\therefore$  CO is perpendicular to AB.

or, CD is perpendicular to AB.

Q. E. D.

### Page 19.

1. Let ABC be an isosceles triangle and let AD be the bisector of the vertical angle BAC meeting BC in D.



(2) It is required to prove that AD bisects the base BC.

Proof.—In the two  $\triangle^s$  BAD and ACD

Because {  $\begin{cases} \text{the side BA} = \text{the side AC (being sides of an} \\ \text{isosceles triangle)} \\ \text{the side DA is common to both.} \\ \text{and the included } \angle \text{BAD} = \text{the included} \\ \angle \text{CAD (by hypothesis)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two triangles BAD and ACD are equal in all respects.

(Theor. 4)

so that  $BD = DC$ ;

i. e.  $BC$  is bisected at  $D$ .

(ii) It is required to prove that  $AD$  is perpendicular to  $BC$ .

Proof.—In the two  $\triangle^s$   $BAD$  and  $ADC$ .

Because { the side  $AB$  = the side  $AC$  (being sides of an isosceles triangle)  
the side  $AD$  is common to both  
and the included  $\angle BAD$  = the included  $\angle DAC$   
(by hypothesis)

$\therefore$  the two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects. (Theor. 4)

so that, the  $\angle ADB$  = the  $\angle ADC$

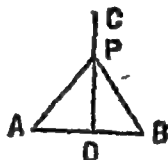
and these being adjacent angles, each is a rt.  $\angle$ ,

(From definition)

$\therefore AD$  is perpendicular to  $BC$ .

Q. E. D.

2. Let  $AB$  be a straight line, and  $O$  its middle point.  
Let  $OC$  be perpendicular to  $AB$  at  $O$  and let  
 $P$  be any point in  $OC$ . Join  $PA$  and  $PB$ .



It is required to prove that  $PA$  and  $PB$  are equal.

Proof.—In the two  $\triangle^s$   $POA$  and  $POB$

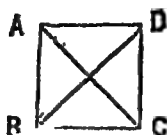
Because {  $PO$  is common to both  
 $AO = OB$  (by hypothesis)  
and the included  $\angle POA$  = the included  $\angle POB$   
(being rt.  $\angle^s$ )

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects. (Theor. 4)

so that  $PA = PB$ .

Q. E. D.

3. Let  $ABCD$  be a square and let  $AC$  and  $BD$  be its two diagonals.



It is required to prove that the diagonals  $AC$  and  $BD$  are equal

Proof—In the two  $\triangle^s ADC$  and  $BDC$

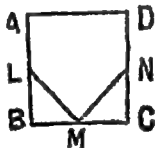
Because {  $AD=BC$  (being sides of a square)  
 $DC$  is common to both  
 and the included  $\angle ADC =$  the included  $\angle BCD$   
 (being rt  $\angle^s$ )

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects. (Theor. 4)

$\therefore$  so that  $AC=BD$ .

Q. E. D.

4 (i) Let  $ABCD$  be a square, and let  $L$  be the middle point of  $AB$ ,  $M$  the middle point of  $BC$ , and  $N$  the middle point of  $CD$ . Join  $LM$  and  $MN$ .



It is required to prove that  $LM$  and  $MN$  are equal.

Proof.—Because  $AB=BC=CD$  (being sides of a square)

And  $AL=LB=\frac{1}{2}AB$ .

and  $DN=NC=\frac{1}{2}CD$ .

$\therefore LB=NC$

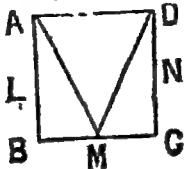
Now, in the two triangles  $BLM$  and  $MNC$

Because {  $BL=NC$  (proved)  
 $BM=MC$  (by hypothesis.)  
 and the included  $\angle LBM =$  the included  $\angle MCN$   
 (being rt.  $\angle^s$ )

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects. (Theor. 4)

So that  $LM = MN$ .

(ii) Let  $ABCD$  be a square and let  $L$ ,  $M$ ,  $N$  be the middle points of  $AB$ ,  $BC$ ,  $CD$  respectively.



Join  $MA$  and  $MD$ .

It is required to prove that  $MA$  and  $MD$  are equal.

Proof.—In the two  $\triangle^s$   $ABM$  and  $DMC$

Because  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} AB = DC \text{ (being sides of a square)} \\ BM = MC \text{ (by hypothesis)} \\ \text{and the included } \angle ABM = \text{the included } \angle DMC \\ \text{(being rt. } \angle^s) \end{array} \right.$

$\therefore$  two triangles are equal in all respects. (Theor. 4)  
so that  $AM = DM$ .

(iii) Let  $ABCD$  be a square and let  $L$ ,  $M$ ,  $N$ , be the middle points of  $AB$ ,  $BC$ ,  $CD$  respectively.

Join  $AM$  and  $AN$ .



It is required to prove that  $AM$  and  $AN$  are equal.

Proof—Because  $BC = CD$  (being sides of a square).

And  $BM = MC = \frac{1}{2}BC$ .

and  $DN = CN = \frac{1}{2}CD$ .

$\therefore BM = DN$ .

Now, in the two  $\triangle^s$   $ABM$  and  $ADN$

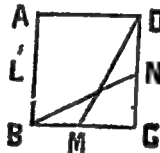


Because {  $\begin{cases} BM = DN \text{ (proved),} \\ AB = AD \text{ (being sides of a square)} \\ \text{and the included } \angle ABM = \text{the included } \angle ADN \\ \text{(being rt. } \angle^s) \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

so that  $AM = AN$

(2v) Let  $ABCD$  be a square and let  $L, M, N$  be the middle points of  $AB, BC, CD$  respectively.



Join  $BN$  and  $DM$ .

It is required to prove that  $BN$  and  $DM$  are equal.

Proof—Because  $BC = CD$  (being sides of a square)

And  $BM = MC = \frac{1}{2}BC$  and  $DN = CN = \frac{1}{2}CD$ .

$\therefore MC = CN$ .

Now in the two  $\triangle^s BNC$  and  $MCD$ .

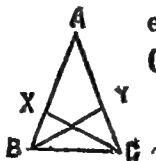
Because {  $\begin{cases} NC = MC \text{ (proved)} \\ BC = CD \text{ (hypothesis)} \\ \text{and the included } \angle BCN = \text{the included } \angle DCM \\ \text{(being rt. } \angle^s) \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  Two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects. (Theor. 4)

so that  $BN = DM$

Q. E. D.

5. Let  $ABC$  be an isosceles triangle. From the equal sides  $AB$  and  $AC$  two equal parts  $AX$  and  $AY$  are cut off. Join  $BY$  and  $CX$ .



It is required to prove that  $BY$  and  $CX$  are equal.

Proof.—In the two  $\triangle^s$   $ABY$  and  $ACX$

Because  $\begin{cases} AY=AX \text{ (by hypothesis)} \\ AB=AC \text{ (being equal sides of isosceles triangle),} \\ \text{and the } \angle BAY \text{ or } \angle CAX \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

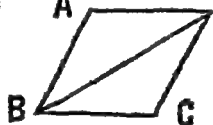
$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects. (Theor. 4)

so that,  $BY = CX$ .

Q. E. D.

### Page 21.

1. Let  $ABCD$  be a quadrilateral whose all sides are equal, and let the diagonal  $BD$  be joined.



(i) It is required to prove that the  $\angle^s$   $ABD$  and  $ADB$  are equal.

Proof—Because in the  $\triangle ABD$ ,  $AB=AD$  (by hypothesis)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ADB = \text{the } \angle ABD$ . (Theor. 5)

(ii) It is required to prove that the  $\angle^s$   $CBD$  and  $CDB$  are equal.

Proof—Because in the  $\triangle CBD$ ,  $CB=CD$  (by hypothesis)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle CBD = \text{the } \angle CDB$  (Theor. 5)

(iii) It is required to prove that the  $\angle^s$   $ABC$  and  $ADC$  are equal.

Proof—Because in the  $\triangle ABD$ ,  $AD=AB$  (by hypothesis)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ADB = \text{the } \angle ABD$  (Theor. 5)

Again because in the  $\triangle CBD$   $CB=CD$  by hypothesis

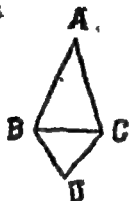
$\therefore$  the  $\angle CBD = \text{the } \angle CDB$  (Theor. 5)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s$   $ADB$  and  $CDB$  together  $=$  the  $\angle^s$   $ABD$  and  $CBD$  together

Or the  $\angle ADC = \angle ABC$ .

Q. E. D.

2. Let  $\triangle ABC$  and  $\triangle DBC$  be two isosceles triangles drawn on the same base  $BC$  but on opposite side of it.



It is required to prove that the  $\angle^s ABD$  and  $ACD$  are equal.

Proof.—Because in the  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $AB = AC$  (being sides of an isosceles triangle)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC = \angle ACB$  (Theor. 5)

Again because in the  $\triangle DBC$ ,  $DB = DC$  (being sides of an isosceles triangle)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle DBC = \angle DCB$  (Theor. 5)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s ABC$  and  $DBC$  together  $=$  the  $\angle^s ACB$  and  $DCB$  together or the  $\angle ABD = \angle ACD$

Q. E. D.

3. Let  $\triangle ABC$  and  $\triangle DBC$  be two isosceles triangles drawn on the same base  $BC$  and on the same side of it.



It is required to prove that the  $\angle^s ABD$  and  $ACD$  are equal.

Proof.—Because in the  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $AB = AC$  (being sides of an isosceles triangle)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC =$  the  $\angle ACB$  (Theor. 5)

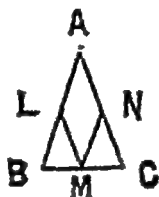
Again because in the  $\triangle DBC$ ,  $DB = DC$  (being sides of an isosceles triangle)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle DBC =$  the  $\angle DCB$  (Theor. 5)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC -$  the  $\angle DBC =$  the  $\angle ACB -$  the  $\angle DCB$  or the  $\angle ABD =$  the  $\angle ACD$ .

Q. E. D.

4. (i) Let  $ABC$  be an isosceles triangle of which the sides  $AB$  and  $AC$  are equal. Let  $L, M, N$  be the middle points of  $AB, BC$  and  $CA$  respectively. Join  $LM$  and  $NM$ .



It is required to prove that  $LM$  and  $NM$  are equal.

Proof.—Because  $AB = AC$  (by hypothesis),

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC =$  the  $\angle ACB$  (Theor. 5)

$AL = LB = \frac{1}{2} AB$ ; and  $AN = NC = \frac{1}{2} AC$

$\therefore LB = NC$ .

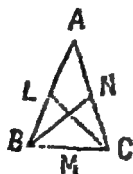
Now, in the two  $\triangle$ s  $LBM$  and  $MCN$

Because  $\begin{cases} LB = NC \text{ (proved)} \\ BM = MC \text{ (by hypothesis)} \\ \text{and the included } \angle LBM = \text{the included } \angle NCM \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle$ s are equal in all respects. (Theor. 4)

so that  $LM = MN$ .

(ii) Let  $ABC$  be an isosceles triangle whose sides  $AB$  and  $AC$  are equal and let  $L, M, N$  be the middle points of  $AB, BC$  and  $CA$  respectively. Join  $BN$  and  $CL$ .



It is required to prove that  $BN$  and  $CL$  are equal.

Proof — Because in the  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $AB=AC$  (being sides of an isosceles triangle)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC = \text{the } \angle ACB$  (Theor. 5)

$AL=LB = \frac{1}{2}AB$ , and  $AN=NC = \frac{1}{2}AC$

$\therefore AL=AN$  Now, in the two  $\triangle^s ABN$  and  $ALC$

Because  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} AN=AL \text{ (proved)} \\ AB=AC \text{ (being sides of an isosceles triangle)} \\ \text{and the included } \angle BAN \text{ or } \angle CAL \text{ is common} \\ \text{to both} \end{array} \right.$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

so that  $BN=CL$ .

(iii) (See Fig in Ex. 4 (i).

Let  $ABC$  be an isosceles triangle whose sides  $AB$  and  $AC$  are equal and let  $L, M, N$ , be the middle points of  $AB, BC$  and  $CA$  respectively. Join  $LM$  and  $NM$ .

It is required to prove that the  $\angle^s ALM$  and  $ANM$  are equal

Proof — Because in the  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $AB=AC$  (being sides of an isosceles triangle)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC = \text{the } \angle ACB$ . (Theor. 5)

But  $AL=LB = \frac{1}{2}AB$ , and  $AN=NC = \frac{1}{2}AC$

$\therefore LB = NC$ .

Now, in the  $\triangle^s LBN$  and  $NMC$

Because  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} LB=NC \text{ (proved)} \\ BM=MC \text{ (by hypothesis)} \\ \text{and the included } \angle LBM = \text{the included } \angle NCM \\ \text{proved} \end{array} \right.$

$\therefore$  two  $\angle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

so that the  $\angle BLM = \text{the } \angle MNC$ .

Because  $\overline{LM}$  stands on  $\overline{AB}$  at  $L$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s$   $ALM$  and  $MLB$  together  $= 2$  rt.  $\angle^s$   
(Theor. 1)

Also, because  $\overline{NM}$  stands on  $\overline{AC}$  at  $N$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s$   $ANM$  and  $MNC$  together  $= 2$  rt.  $\angle^s$   
(Theor. 1)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s$   $ALM$  and  $MLB =$  the  $\angle^s$   $ANM$  and  $MNC$ .

But the  $\angle$   $MLB =$  the  $\angle$   $MNC$  (proved)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle$   $ALM =$  the  $\angle$   $ANM$ .

Q E D.

### Page 26.

1. (See Fig. in Ex. 4, p. 19.)

Let  $\triangle ABC$  be an isosceles triangle and let  $D$  be the middle point of  $BC$ . Join  $AD$ .

(i) It is required to prove that  $AD$  bisects the vertical  $\angle$   $BAC$ .

Proof.—In the two triangles  $ABD$  and  $ACD$

Because  $\begin{cases} AB=AC \text{ (being sides of an isosceles triangle)} \\ BD=DC \text{ (by hypothesis)} \\ \text{and } AD \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects. (Theor. 7)

so that the  $\angle$   $BAD =$  the  $\angle$   $DAC$

*v. e.* the vertical  $\angle$   $BAC$  is bisected by  $AD$ .

(ii) It is required to prove that  $AD$  is perpendicular to the base  $BC$ .

Proof.—In the two  $\triangle^s$   $ABD$  and  $ACD$ .

Because  $\begin{cases} AB=AC \text{ (being sides of an isosceles triangle)} \\ BD=DC \text{ (by hypothesis)} \\ \text{and } AD \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects. (Theor. 7)

so that, the  $\angle ADB = \text{the } \angle ADC$  and these being adjacent angles, each is rt.  $\angle$ .

$\therefore AD$  is perpendicular to  $BC$ .

Q. E. D.

2. Let  $ABCD$  be a rhombus and let the diagonal  $AC$  be joined.



(i) It required to prove that the  $\angle^s ABC$  and  $ADC$  are equal.

Proof.—In the two  $\triangle^s ABC$  and  $ADC$

Because  $\begin{cases} AB=AD \text{ (being sides of a rhombus)} \\ BC=CD \text{ (being sides of a rhombus) and } AC \text{ is} \\ \text{common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 7)

so that the  $\angle ABC = \text{the } \angle ADC$ .

(ii) It is required to prove that the angles  $BAD$  and  $BCD$  are bisected by  $AC$ .

Proof.—In the two  $\triangle^s ABC$  and  $ADC$

Because  $\begin{cases} AB=AD \text{ (being sides of a rhombus)} \\ BC=CD \text{ (being sides of a rhombus)} \\ \text{and } AC \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects. (Theor. 7)

so that the  $\angle DAC = \text{the } \angle BAC$  and the  $\angle ACD = \text{the } \angle ACB$  i. e. the  $\angle^s DAB$  and  $DCB$  are bisected by  $AC$ .

Q. E. D.

3. Let  $ABCD$  be a quadrilateral in which  $AB=CD$  and  $AD=CB$  Join  $AC$ .



It is required to prove that the  $\angle^s$   $ADC$  and  $ABC$  are equal.

**Proof.**—In the two  $\triangle^s$   $ADC$  and  $ABC$

Because  $\begin{cases} AD=BC \text{ (by hypothesis)} \\ DC=AB \text{ (by hypothesis)} \\ \text{and } AC \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects. (Theor. 7)

so that the  $\angle ADC = \text{the } \angle ABC$ .

Q. E. D.

4 (i) Let  $ABC$  and  $DBC$  be two isosceles triangles standing on the same base  $BC$  and  $A$  on the same side of it.



It is required to prove that the  $\angle^s$   $ABD$  and  $ACD$  are equal.

Join  $AD$

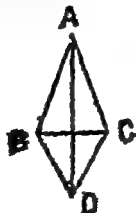
**Proof.**—In the two  $\triangle^s$   $BAD$  and  $CAD$ ,

Because  $\begin{cases} BA=AC \text{ (being sides of isosceles } \triangle ABC) \\ BD=DC \text{ (being sides of isosceles } \triangle DBC) \\ \text{and } AD \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects. (Theor. 7)

so that the  $\angle ABD = \text{the } \angle ACD$ .

(ii) Let  $ABC$  and  $DBC$  be two isosceles triangles standing on the same base  $BC$  but on opposite sides of it.





It is required to prove that the  $\angle^s$  ABD and ACD are equal

Join AD

Proof — In the two  $\triangle^s$  BAD and CAD

Because  $\begin{cases} AB=AC \text{ (being sides of an isosceles triangle)} \\ BD=DC \text{ (being sides of an isosceles triangle)} \\ \text{and AD is common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects. (Theor. 7)

so that the  $\angle$  ABD = the  $\angle$  ACD.

Q. E. D.

5. (See. fig. in Ex 4 (2)).

Let ABC and DBC be two isosceles triangles standing on the same base BC but on opposite sides of it and let AD be joined.

It is required to prove that the  $\angle^s$  BAC and BDC are bisected by AD

Proof — In the two  $\triangle^s$  BAD and DAC

Because  $\begin{cases} BA=AC \text{ (being sides of an isosceles triangle)} \\ BD=DC \text{ (being sides of an isosceles triangle)} \\ \text{and AD is common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor 7)

so that the  $\angle$  BAD = the  $\angle$  CAD and the  $\angle$  BDA = the  $\angle$  CDA

i. e. the  $\angle^s$  BAC and BDC are bisected by AD.

Q. E. D.

6. Let ABC be an isosceles triangle and let D and E be the middle points of AB and AC respectively. Let BE and CD be joined.



It is required to prove that  $BE$  and  $CD$  are equal.

Proof.—In the  $\triangle ABC$ , because  $AB=AC$  (being sides of an isosceles triangle)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC =$  the  $\angle ACB$  (Theor. 5)

$AD=DB=\frac{1}{2} AB$ , and  $AE=EC=\frac{1}{2} AC$

$\therefore DB=EC$ .

Now, in the two  $\triangle^s DBC$  and  $EBC$

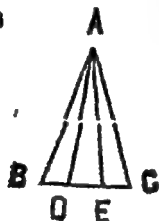
Because  $\begin{cases} DB=EC \text{ (proved)} \\ BC \text{ is common to both} \\ \text{and the included } \angle DBC = \text{the included } \angle ECB \\ \text{(proved)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects. (Theor. 4)

so that the side  $DC =$  the side  $BE$ .

Q. E. D.

7. Let  $ABC$  be an isosceles triangle, and let  $D, E$  be two such points in  $BC$  that  $BD=EC$ . Join  $AD$  and  $AE$ .



It is required to prove that  $AD=AE$

Proof—Because in the  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $AB=AC$  (being sides of an isosceles triangle)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC =$  the  $\angle ACB$  (Theor. 5)

Now, in the two  $\triangle^s ABD$  and  $AEC$

Because  $\begin{cases} AB=AC \text{ (being sides of an isosceles triangle)} \\ BD=EC \text{ by hypothesis} \\ \text{and the included } \angle ABD = \text{the included } \angle ACE \\ \text{(proved)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects. (Theor. 4)

so that  $AD=AE$ .

Q. E. D.

8. Let  $ABC$  be an equilateral triangle and let  $D, E, F$  be the middle points of  $AB, BC$  and  $CA$  respectively. Join  $DE, EF$  and  $DF$ .



It is required to prove that  $DEF$  is an equilateral triangle.

**Proof** — Because the  $\triangle ABC$  is equilateral,

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ACB = \text{the } \angle BAC = \text{the } \angle ABC$   
(Theor. 5, Cor. 2)

In the  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $AB = AC = BC$  (being sides of an equilateral triangle)

$AD = DB = \frac{1}{2} AB$ ;  $BE = EC = \frac{1}{2} BC$ ; and  $AF = FC = \frac{1}{2} AC$

$\therefore AD = DB = BE = EC = AF = FC$

Now, in the two  $\triangle^s ADF$  and  $BDE$

Because  $\begin{cases} AD = BD \text{ (by hypothesis)} \\ AF = BE \text{ (proved)} \\ \text{and the } \angle ADF = \angle DBE \text{ (proved)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects. (Theor. 4)

so that  $DF = DE$

Again in the two  $\triangle^s ADF$  and  $FEC$

Because  $\begin{cases} AF = FC \text{ (by hypothesis)} \\ AD = EC \text{ (proved)} \\ \text{and the } \angle DAF = \text{the } \angle FCE \text{ (proved)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects. (Theor. 4)

so that  $DF = FE$

$$\therefore DE = FE = DF$$

Hence, DEF is an equilateral triangle.

Q. E. D.

9. Let ABC be an isosceles triangle and let the angles ABC and ACB be bisected by BO and CO respectively.



(i) It is required to prove that BO and CO are equal.

Join AO

Proof.—In the  $\triangle ABC$ , because  $AB = AC$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC =$  the  $\angle ACB$  (Theor. 5)

the  $\angle OBC = \frac{1}{2}$  the  $\angle ABC$  (given)

and the  $\angle OCB = \frac{1}{2}$  the  $\angle ACB$  (given)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle OBC =$  the  $\angle OCB$

$\therefore OB = OC$  (Theor. 6)

(ii) It is required to prove that the  $\angle BAC$  is bisected by AO.

Join AO.

Proof.—in the  $\triangle ABC$ , because  $AB = AC$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC =$  the  $\angle ACB$  (Theor. 5)

the  $\angle OBC = \frac{1}{2}$  the  $\angle ABC$  (given)

and the  $\angle OCB = \frac{1}{2}$  the  $\angle ACB$  (given)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle OBC =$  the  $\angle OCB$

$\therefore OB = OC$  (Theor. 6)

Now, in the two  $\triangle^s AOB$  and  $AOC$

Because  $\begin{cases} AB = AC \text{ (given)} \\ BO = OC \text{ (proved)} \\ \text{and } AO \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

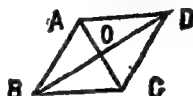
$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects. (Theor. 7)

so that the  $\angle BAO = \angle CAO$ .

i. e.  $AO$  bisects the  $\angle BAC$ .

Q. E. D.

10 Let  $ABCD$  be a rhombus and let the diagonals  $AC$  and  $BD$  cut at  $O$ .



It is required to prove that the diagonals  $AC$  and  $BD$  bisect one another at right angles at  $O$

Proof—In the two  $\triangle^s ABC$  and  $ADC$

Because  $\begin{cases} AB=AD \text{ (by hypothesis)} \\ BC=CD \text{ (by hypothesis)} \\ \text{and } AC \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects. (Theor. 7)

so that the  $\angle BCA = \angle DCA$ .

Again, in the two  $\triangle^s BOC$  and  $DOC$ .

Because  $\begin{cases} BC=CD \text{ (by hypothesis)} \\ CO \text{ is common to both} \\ \text{and the } \angle BCO = \angle DCO \text{ (proved)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

so that  $BO=OD$  and the  $\angle BOC = \angle COD$ , and these being adjacent angles each is a rt  $\angle$ .

Again, in the two  $\triangle^s ADB$  and  $DCB$ .

Because  $\begin{cases} AD=DC \text{ (by hypothesis)} \\ AB=BC \text{ (by hypothesis)} \\ \text{and } BD \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects. (Theor. 7)

so that the  $\angle ADB = \angle CDB$

Again, in the two  $\triangle^s AOD$  and  $DOC$ .

Because  $\begin{cases} AD=DC \text{ (by hypothesis)} \\ DO \text{ is common to both} \\ \text{and the } \angle ADO = \text{the } \angle CDO \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects. (Theor. 4)

so that  $AO=OC$  and the  $\angle AOD = \text{the } \angle DOC$ , and these being adjacent angles each is a rt.  $\angle$ .

Because  $AC$  and  $BD$  cut one another at  $O$ .

$\therefore$  The  $\angle AOB = \text{the } \angle DOC$  (Theor. 3)

But the  $\angle DOC$  is a rt.  $\angle$  (proved)

$\therefore$  The  $\angle AOB$  is a rt.  $\angle$

i.e., the  $\angle^s BOA, AOD, DOC$  and  $COB$  are each a rt.  $\angle$

and  $BO=OD, AO=OC$

$\therefore$  the diagonals  $AC$  and  $BD$  bisect one another at right angles at  $O$ .

Q. E. D.

11. Let  $ABC$  be an isosceles triangle and let the equal sides  $BA, CA$  be produced to any points  $E$  and  $F$  beyond the vertex  $A$ , such that  $AE$  is equal to  $AF$ .



Let  $FB$  and  $EC$  be joined.

It is required to prove that  $FB$  and  $EC$  are equal.

Proof—In the two  $\triangle^s ABF$  and  $ACE$ ,

Because  $\begin{cases} AB=AC \text{ (given)} \\ AF=AE \text{ (given)} \\ \text{and the } \angle BAF = \text{the } \angle CAE \end{cases}$  (Theor. 3)

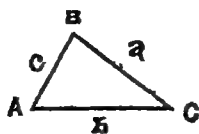
$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects. (Theor. 4)

so that  $FB=EC$ .

Q. E. D.

## Page 27.

1. Draw a straight line  $AC=2.1''$ . With C and A as centres and the radii equal to  $2.0''$  and  $1.3''$  draw two arcs cutting at B.



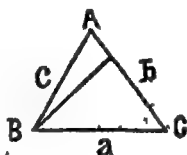
Join BA and BC.

Then ABC is the required triangle.

Measure the  $\angle^s$  ABC, ACB and BAC, and see that the  $\angle BAC=68^\circ$ , the  $\angle ACB=37^\circ$  and the  $\angle ABC=75^\circ$ .

The sum of the  $\angle^s$  ABC, ACB and BAC  $=68^\circ+37^\circ+75^\circ$   
 $=180^\circ$ .

2 Draw a straight line  $AC=7$  cm. With A and C, as centres and the radii equal to  $6.5$  cm, and  $7.5$  cm. draw two arcs cutting at B.



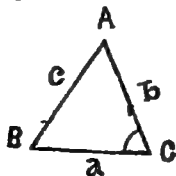
Join BA and CB.

Then ABC is the required triangle.

From B drop a perpendicular BD to CA.

Measure BD and it will be found to be equal to  $6$  cm

3 Construct an angle  $BCA=65^\circ$  of which the arm BC is equal to  $7$  cm. and AC equal to  $6$  cm.



Join AB.

Then  $\triangle ABC$  is the required triangle.

Theoretically any two triangles having these parts would have two sides of the one equal to two sides of the other as well as their included angles equal.

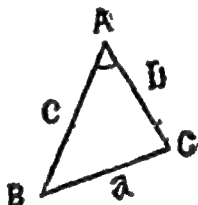
Then the triangles would be equal in all respects.

(Theor. 4)

$\therefore$  The triangles would be alike in size and shape.

The above statement can be experimentally illustrated by cutting two such triangles from a piece of paper and by superposing one of the triangles on the other when they will exactly coincide.

4. Make an angle  $\angle ABC = 57^\circ$  whose arm  $BA = 2.5''$  and  $AC = 2''$ .



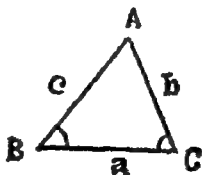
Join BC.

Then  $\triangle ABC$  is the required triangle.

Measure the side BC, the  $\angle ABC$  and the  $\angle ACB$ .

It will be found that  $BC = 2.2''$ , the  $\angle ABC = 50^\circ$  and the  $\angle ACB = 73^\circ$  nearly.

Draw a straight line  $BC = 2.2''$ . At B and C make angles  $\angle ABC$  and  $\angle ACB = 50^\circ$  and  $73^\circ$  respectively cutting at A.



Then  $\triangle ABC$  is the required triangle.

Measure the sides BA and AC and the  $\angle BAC$



It will be found that  $BA=25''$ ,  $AC=2''$  and the  $\angle BAC=57^\circ$  (very nearly)

$\therefore$  the triangles constructed in both cases are indentically equal.

5. Draw a vertical line  $AB=3.5''$  representing the height of the window above the ground. From B draw  $BC=12''$  perpendicular to  $AB$  which is the distance of the ladder from the base of the house.



Join  $AC$  which represents the ladder.

Measure  $AC$  and it will be found to be equal to  $37''$ .

$\therefore$  The ladder is 37 ft. long.

6. Let  $A$  be any point representing the starting point. From  $A$  draw  $AB=99$  cm. vertically upwards. From  $B$  draw  $BC=2$  cm perpendicular to  $AB$ . Then  $C$  represents the final position. Join  $CA$  and measure it.



It will be found to be equal to 101 cm.

$\therefore$  The distance from the starting point is 101 metres.

7. Draw a horizontal line  $BC=3''$ . At  $C$  make an angle  $BCA=42^\circ$ . From  $B$  draw  $BA$  perpendicular to  $BC$  meeting  $CA$  in  $A$ .

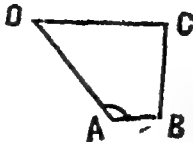


Then  $BC$  represents the shadow,  $AB$  the direction of the rays of sun and  $AB$  the vertical pole

Measure  $BA$  and it will be found  $2.7''$  long

$\therefore$  the pole is 27 ft. long

8. Let A be the starting point of the surveyor. From A draw  $AB = 1.5''$  to the right. At B drop a perpendicular  $BC = 3''$  to  $AB$  vertically upwards. From C draw  $CD = 4.5''$  perpendicular to  $BC$  to the left. Join  $DA$ .



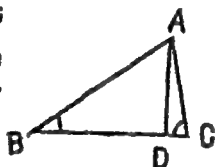
Measure  $DA$  and it will be found to be  $4.24''$ .

$\therefore$  the distance of the point D from the starting point A is 424 yards.

Also measure the  $\angle DAB$  and it will be found to be  $135^\circ$ .

$\therefore$  the point D bears a north westerly direction from the point A.

9 Let B and C be two points at a distance of 26 cm apart. Join BC and at the point B make an  $\angle CBA = 33^\circ$  and at the point C an  $\angle BCA = 81^\circ$ , the two arms of the angles CBA and BCA meeting at A.



Then A represents the position of the vessel.

Measure  $AB$  and  $AC$ . It will be found that  $AB = 2.81''$  and  $AC = 1.55''$ .

$\therefore$  the vessel is 281 yards from B and 155 yards from C.

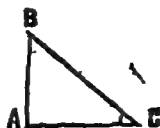
Drop  $AD$  perpendicular to  $BC$ .

Then D represents the nearest point on the shore.

Measure  $AD$  and it will be found  $1.53''$  long.

$\therefore$  the vessel is 153 yard from the nearest point on the shore.

10 Make an angle  $ACB=24^\circ$  having the sides  $AC$ ,  $CB=2.45''$  and  $3.2''$  respectively.



Then A and B represent the two points in the park between which the lake intervenes, and C represents the third point from which both A and B are accessible.

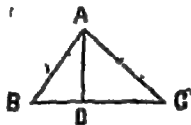
Join AB and measure it.

It will be found that  $AB=2.14''$

$\therefore$  the distance between the points A and B is 214 yards.

### Page 29.

1. Let ABC be any triangle.



It is required to prove that any two angles of the  $\triangle ABC$  are together less than two right angles.

Take any point D in BC Join AD.

Proof—Because in the  $\triangle ABD$ , BD is produced to C

$\therefore$  the exterior  $\angle ADC$  is greater than the interior opposite  $\angle ABD$ , or  $ABC$  (Theor. 8)

Again, because in the  $\triangle ADC$ , DC is produced to B

$\therefore$  the exterior  $\angle ADB$  is greater than the interior opposite  $\angle ACD$ , or  $ACB$  (Theor. 8)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s ABC$  and  $ACB$  are together less than the  $\angle^s ADC$  and  $ADB$

But the  $\angle^s$  ADC and ADB together = 2 rt.  $\angle^s$ ,  
(Theor. 1)

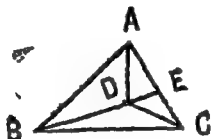
$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s$  ABC and ACB of the  $\triangle$  ABC are together less than 2 rt.  $\angle^s$ .

Q. E. D.

2. Let ABC be a triangle and D be any point within it. Join BD and CD.

It is required to prove that the  $\angle$  BDC is greater than the  $\angle$  BAC.

(i) Produce BD beyond D to meet AC in E.



In the  $\triangle$  ABE, AE is produced to C

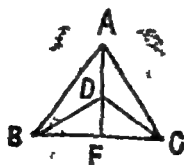
$\therefore$  the exterior  $\angle$  BEC, or  $\angle$  DEC is greater than the interior opposite  $\angle$  BAE, or  $\angle$  BAC (Theor. 8.)

Again, in the  $\triangle$  DEC, ED is produced to B

$\therefore$  the exterior  $\angle$  BDC is greater than the interior opposite  $\angle$  DEC.

$\therefore$  still more is the  $\angle$  BDC greater than the  $\angle$  BAC.

(ii) Join AD and produce AD beyond D to meet BC in F.



In the  $\triangle$  ABD, AD is produced to F

$\therefore$  the ext.  $\angle$  BDF is greater than the int. opp.  $\angle$  BAD (Theor. 8)

In the  $\triangle ADC$ ,  $AD$  is produced to  $F$

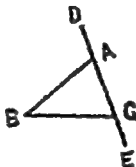
$\therefore$  the ext.  $\angle FDC$  is greater than the int. opp.  $\angle CAD$  (Theor. 8)

$\therefore$  the whole  $\angle BDC$  is greater than the whole  $\angle BAC$ .

$\therefore$

Q. E. D.

3. Let  $ABC$  be any triangle and let the side  $AC$  be produced both ways to the points  $D$  and  $E$ .



It is required to prove that the exterior angles  $BAD$  and  $BCE$  so formed are together greater than 2 rt.  $\angle^s$ .

The  $\angle^s$   $BAD$  and  $BAC$  together  $= 2$  rt  $\angle^s$  (Theor. 1)

and the  $\angle^s$   $BCE$  and  $BCA$  together  $= 2$  rt  $\angle^s$  (Theor. 1)

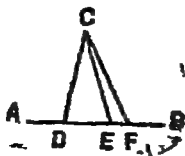
$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s$   $BAD$ ,  $BAC$ ,  $BCE$  and  $BCA$  together  $= 4$  rt  $\angle^s$ .

But in the  $\triangle ABC$ , the  $\angle^s$   $BAC$  and  $BCA$  are together less than 2 rt.  $\angle^s$  (Cor. 1. Theor. 8)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s$   $BAD$  and  $BCE$  are together greater than 2 rt  $\angle^s$ .

Q. E. D.

4 Let  $AB$  be a given straight line and let  $C$  be a given point outside it,



It is required to prove that there cannot be drawn more than two straight lines of the same given length from C to AB.

Draw two equal straight lines CD and CE to AB and if possible let CF be another straight line equal to CD or CE drawn from C to AB.

Proof.—Because  $CD = CE$  (by construction)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle CDE =$  the  $\angle CED$  (Theor. 5)

Again, because  $CD = CF$  (by supposition)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle CDF =$  the  $\angle CFD$  (Theor. 5)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle CED =$  the  $\angle CFD$

i. e., the ext.  $\angle CED =$  the int. opp.  $\angle CFD$  which is absurd according to Theor 8

$\therefore$  CF is not equal to CE or CD.

$\therefore$  CE and CD are the only two equal straight lines drawn from C to AB.

Q. E. D.

5. See Fig. in Ex. 5 on p 13.

Let ABC be an isosceles triangle and let the equal sides AB and AC be produced to any points D and E respectively.

It is required to prove that the exterior  $\angle^s$  CBD and BCE thus formed are each an obtuse angle.

Proof — Because in the  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $AB = AC$  (given)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC =$  the  $\angle ACB$  (Theor. 5)

But the  $\angle^s ABC$  and  $ACB$  are together less than 2 rt.  $\angle^s$   
(Cor. 1. Theor. 8)

Hence, each of the  $\angle^s ABC$  and  $ACB$  is acute

But the  $\angle^s ABC$  and  $CBD$  together  $=$  2 rt.  $\angle^s$  (Theor. 1)

the  $\angle ABC$  is acute, hence the  $\angle CBD$  is obtuse.

Also the  $\angle^s ACB$  and  $BCE$  together  $=$  2 rt.  $\angle^s$ .

(Theor. 1)

but the  $\angle ACB$  is acute, hence the  $\angle BCE$  is obtuse.  
i.e., each of the ext.  $\angle^s CBD$  and  $BCE$  is obtuse.

Q E D.

Page 34.

1. Let  $ABC$  be a right-angled triangle, right angled at  $A$ .



It is required to prove that the hypotenuse  $BC$  is the greatest side.

Proof.—In the  $\triangle ABC$ , the  $\angle BAC$  is a rt  $\angle$

hence, each of the  $\angle^s ABC$  and  $ACB$  is acute

(Cor 2 Theor. 8)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle BAC$  is the greatest angle.

Because the  $\angle BAC$  is greater than the  $\angle ABC$

$\therefore$  the side  $BC$  is greater than the side  $AC$  (Theor 10)

Again, because the  $\angle BAC$  is greater than the  $\angle ACB$

$\therefore$  the side  $BC$  is greater than the side  $AB$  (Theor. 10)

$\therefore BC$  is the greatest side.

Q. E. D.

2. Let  $ABC$  be a triangle in which  $BC$  is the greatest side.



It is required to prove that the side  $BC$  makes acute angles with each of the other sides  $AB$  and  $AC$ , i.e., the angles  $ABC$  and  $ACB$  are acute.

Proof—Because  $BC$  is greater than  $AB$  given)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle BAC$  is greater than the  $\angle ACB$  (Theor. 9)

But the  $\angle^s BAC$  and  $ACB$  are together less than two right angles (Cor. Theor. 8)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC$  is less than a right angle, or, is an acute angle.

Similarly, it can be proved that the  $\angle ACB$  is an acute angle.

Q. E. D.

3. See Fig. in Ex. 2 (i) on page 29.

Let  $ABC$  be a triangle and let two straight lines  $BD$  and  $CD$  be drawn from the ends  $B, C$ , to meet at  $D$  within the triangle.

It is required to prove that  $BD$  and  $DC$  are together less than  $BA$  and  $AC$ .

Produce  $BD$  to meet  $AC$  in  $E$ .

*Proof.*—In the  $\triangle ABE$ ,  $AB$  and  $AE$  are together greater than  $BE$  (Theor. 11)

By adding  $EC$  to both, we have

$AB$  and  $(AE + EC)$  i.e.,  $AB$  and  $AC$  together greater than  $BE$  and  $EC$ .

Again, in the  $\triangle DEC$ ,  $DE$  and  $EC$  are together greater than  $DC$  (Theor. 11)

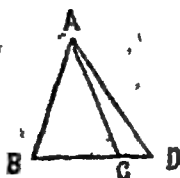
By adding  $BD$  to both, we have

$BE$  (i.e.,  $BD + DE$ ) and  $EC$  together greater than  $BD$  and  $DC$

$\therefore$  Still more are  $AB$  and  $AC$  greater than  $BD$  and  $DC$  or,  $BD$  and  $DC$  are together less than  $AB$  and  $AC$ .

Q. E. D.

4. Let  $ABC$  be an isosceles triangle of which the base  $BC$  is produced to any point  $D$  and let  $AD$  be joined.





It is required to prove that  $AD$  is greater than either of the equal sides  $AB$  and  $AC$  of the  $\triangle ABC$ .

Proof.—In the  $\triangle ACD$ ,  $DC$  is produced to  $B$

$\therefore$  the ext.  $\angle ACB$  is greater than the int. opp.  $\angle ADB$ .

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC$  is greater than the  $\angle ADB$  ( $\because \angle ACB = \angle ABC$  by Theor. 5)

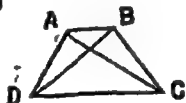
(Theor. 8)

$\therefore$  the side  $AD$  is greater than the side  $AB$  (Theor. 10)  
but  $AB = AC$

$\therefore$  the side  $AD$  is also greater than the side  $AC$ .

Q. E. D.

5. Let  $ABCD$  be a quadrilateral in which the greatest side  $DC$  and the least side  $AB$  are opposite to, one another.



It is required to prove that the  $\angle ABC$  is greater than the  $\angle ADC$  and the  $\angle DAB$  is greater than the  $\angle BCD$ .

Join  $BD$

Proof.—In the  $\triangle ADB$ ,  $AD$  is greater than  $AB$  (given)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABD$  is greater than the  $\angle ADB$  (Theor. 9)

Again, in the  $\triangle BDC$ ,  $DC$  is greater than  $BC$  (given),

$\therefore$  the  $\angle BDC$  is greater than the  $\angle BCD$  (Theor. 9)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s ABD$  and  $DBC$  are greater than the  $\angle^s ADB$  and  $BDC$

or, the  $\angle ABC$  is greater than the  $\angle ADC$ .

Similarly, by joining  $AC$ , it can be proved that the  $\angle DAB$  is greater than the  $\angle BCD$ .

Q. E. D.

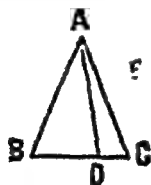
6. Let  $ABC$  be a triangle in which  $AC$  is not greater than  $AB$ , and let  $AD$  be any straight line drawn through the vertex  $A$  and terminated by the base  $BC$ .

It is required to prove that  $AD$  is less than  $AB$ .

If  $AC$  is not greater than  $AB$ , it must be either

(i) equal to or (ii) less than  $AB$ .

(i) If  $AC$  is equal to  $AB$ .



then the  $\angle ACB = \angle ABC$  (Theor. 5)

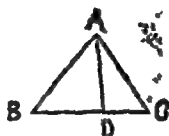
But the ext.  $\angle ADB$  is greater than the int. opp.  $\angle ACB$   
(Theor. 8.)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ADB$  is also greater than the  $\angle ABC$

$\therefore$  the side  $AB$  is greater than the side  $AD$  (Theor. 10)

or,  $AD$  is less than  $AB$ .

(ii) If  $AC$  were less than  $AB$



then the  $\angle ABC$  is less than the  $\angle ACB$  (Theor. 9)

But the ext.  $\angle ADB$  is greater than the int. opp.  $\angle ACB$  (Theor. 8)

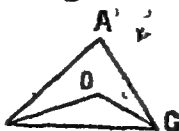
$\therefore$  the  $\angle ADB$  is much greater than the  $\angle ABC$

$\therefore AB$  is greater than  $AD$  (Theor. 10)

or,  $AD$  is less than  $AB$ .

Q. E. D.

7. Let  $ABC$  be a triangle in which the side  $AB$  is greater than the side  $AC$ . Let the angles  $ABC$  and  $ACB$  be bisected by the lines  $BO$  and  $CO$  meeting  $BC$  at  $O$ .



It is required to prove that  $OB$  is greater than  $OC$

Proof—Because  $AB$  is greater than  $AC$  (given)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ACB$  is greater than the  $\angle ABC$  (Theor. 9)

But the  $\angle OBC = \frac{1}{2}$  of the  $\angle ABC$ , and the  $\angle OCB = \frac{1}{2}$  of the  $\angle ACB$  (given)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle OCB$  is greater than the  $\angle OBC$

$\therefore OB$  is greater than  $OC$  (Theor. 10).

Q. E. D.

8. (See Fig in Ex. 2 on p. 34)

Let  $ABC$  be a triangle in which the side  $BC$  is the greatest side

It is required to prove that the difference of any two sides of the  $\triangle ABC$  is less than the third side.

Proof—In the  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $BA$  and  $AC$  are together greater than  $BC$  (Theor. 11)

Subtracting  $AC$  from both we get

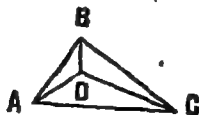
$AB$  greater than  $BC - AC$

i. e.,  $AB$  is greater than the difference of  $AC$  and  $BC$ .

Similarly, it can be proved that  $AC$  is greater than the difference of  $BC$  and  $AB$ , and  $BC$  being the greatest side it is evidently greater than the difference of  $AB$  and  $AC$ .

Q. E. D.

9 Let  $ABC$  be a triangle and let  $D$  be any point within the triangle. Join  $BD$ ,  $AD$  and  $CD$ .



It is required to prove that

$(DB + DA + DC)$  is greater than  $\frac{1}{2} (AB + BC + CA)$

Proof—In the  $\triangle ABD$ ,  $(AD + DB)$  is greater than  $AB$  (Theor. 11).

Similarly, in the  $\triangle ACD$

$(AD+CD)$  is greater than  $AC$ , and in the  $\triangle BCD$ ,

$\angle (BD+CD)$  is greater than  $BC$ .

$\therefore$  by summing up these three results, we get

$2 (DB+DA+DC)$  greater than  $(AB+BC+CA)$

$\therefore (DB+DA+DC)$  is greater than  $\frac{1}{2} (AB+BC+CA)$

Q. E. D.

10 (see fig. in Ex. 5 on p. 24).

Let  $ABCD$  be a quadrilateral and let  $AC$  and  $BD$  be its diagonals

It is required to prove that

$(AB+BC+CD+DA)$  is greater than  $(AC+DB)$ .

Proof.—In the  $\triangle ABD$ ,  $(DA+AB)$  is greater than  $DB$   
(Theor. 11)

Similarly, in the  $\triangle DCB$ ,  $(BC+CD)$  is greater than  $DB$

$\therefore$  in the  $\triangle ADC$ ,  $(AD+DC)$  is greater than  $AC$ ,

and in the  $\triangle ACB$ ,  $(AB+BC)$  is greater than  $AC$ .

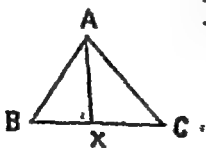
$\therefore$  summing up these four results we get

$2 (AB+BC+CD+DA)$  greater than  $2 (AC+BD)$

$\therefore (AB+BC+CD+DA)$  is greater than  $(AC+BD)$

Q. E. D.

11. Let  $ABC$  be a triangle and let  $AX$  bisect the vertical angle  $BAC$  meeting  $BC$  in  $X$ .

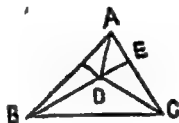


It is required to prove that  $BA$  is greater than  $BX$  and  $CA$  greater than  $CX$ .

**Proof**—In the  $\triangle ABX$ ,  $BX$  is produced to  $C$   
 $\therefore$  the ext.  $\angle AXC$  is greater than the int. opp.  $\angle BAX$   
 But the  $\angle BAX =$  the  $\angle CAX$  (given)  
 $\therefore$  the  $\angle AXC$  is greater than the  $\angle CAX$   
 $\therefore AC$  is greater than  $CX$  (Theor. 10)  
 Similarly, it can be proved that  $BA$  is greater than  $BX$   
 By adding these two last results, we get  
 $AB$  and  $CA$  greater than  $BX$  and  $CX$   
*i. e.*,  $AB$  and  $CA$  are together greater than  $BC$ .  
 Thus we obtain another proof of Theorem 11.

Q. E. D.

**12** Let  $ABC$  be a triangle and let  $D$  be any point within the triangle. Join  $DA$ ,  $DB$  and  $DC$ .



It is required to prove that  $(DA + DB + DC)$  is less than  $(AB + BC + CA)$ .

Produce  $BD$  to meet  $AC$  in  $E$ .

**Proof.**—In the  $\triangle ABE$ ,  $AB$  and  $AE$  are together greater than  $BE$  (Theor. 11)

Adding  $EC$  to both, we have

$AB$  and  $AC$  (*i. e.*,  $EA + EC$ ) greater than  $BE$  and  $EC$ .

In the  $\triangle DEC$ ,  $DE$  and  $EC$  are together greater than  $DC$  (Theor. 11)

Adding  $BD$  to both, we have

$BE$  (*i. e.*,  $DE + BD$ ) and  $EC$  greater than  $DC$  and  $BD$ .

$\therefore AB$  and  $AC$  are much greater than  $DC$  and  $BD$ .

Similarly, by producing  $CD$  to meet  $BA$  it can be proved that  $AB$  and  $BC$  are greater than  $DA$  and  $DC$ , and that  $AC$  and  $BC$  are greater than  $AD$  and  $BD$ .

Summing up these three results, we have

$2(AB + BC + AC)$  greater than  $2(DA + DB + DC)$

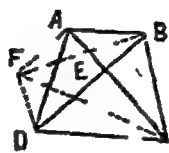
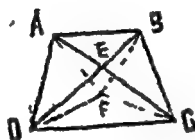
or,  $(AB + BC + AC)$  greater than  $(DA + DB + DC)$

i. e.,  $(DA + DB + DC)$  is less than  $(AB + BC + AC)$

Q. E. D.

13. Let  $ABCD$  be a quadrilateral whose diagonals  $AC$  and  $BD$  cut one

Let  $F$  be any point within the quadrilateral as in the 1st. figure or, outside the quadrilateral as in the 2nd. figure



another at  $E$ .  
given point  
quadrilateral  
figure or, out-  
rilateral as in

It is required to prove that  $(AC + BD)$  is less than  $(FA + FB + FC + FD)$ .

Proof.—In the  $\triangle AFC$ ,  $FA$  and  $FC$  are together greater than  $AC$  (Theor. 11)

In the  $\triangle DFB$ ,  $FD$  and  $FB$  are together greater than  $BD$  (Theor. 11)

Summing up these two results we get

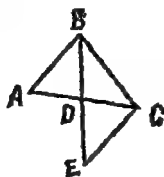
$(FD + FB + FA + FC)$  greater than  $(AC + BD)$

or,  $(AC + BD)$  is less than  $(FA + FB + FC + FD)$

When the point  $F$  coincides with  $E$  the point of intersection of the diagonals  $AC$  and  $BD$ , the proposition fails.

Q. E. D.

14. Let  $ABC$  be a triangle and let  $BD$  be the median to  $AC$ .



It is required to prove that  $AB$  and  $BC$  are together greater than twice the median  $BD$

Produce  $BD$  to any point  $E$  making  $DE = DB$ . Join  $CE$ .

Proof.—In the two  $\triangle^s$   $ADB$  and  $DEC$

Because  $\begin{cases} AD = DC \text{ (given)} \\ BD = DE \text{ (by construction)} \\ \text{and the } \angle ADB = \text{the } \angle EDC \text{ (Theor. 3)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor 4)

so that,  $AB = EC$ .

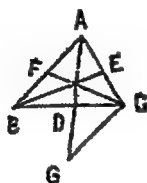
In the  $\triangle BEC$ ,  $BC$  and  $CE$  are together greater than  $BE$   
(Theor. 11)

or,  $BC$  and  $CE$  are greater than  $2 BD$

$\therefore BC$  and  $AB$  are greater than  $2 BD$

Q. E. D.

15. Let  $ABC$  be a triangle and let  $AD$ ,  $BE$ ,  $CF$  be its medians.



It is required to prove that  $(AD + BE + CF)$  is less than  $(AB + BC + CA)$ .

Produce  $AD$  to any point  $G$  making  $DG = AD$ .

Join  $CG$ .

Proof.—In the  $\triangle^s$   $ABD$  and  $DGC$

Because  $\begin{cases} BD = DC \text{ (given)} \\ AD = DG \text{ (by construction)} \\ \text{and the } \angle ADB = \text{the } \angle GDC \text{ (Theor. 3)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

so that,  $AB = GC$ .

In the  $\triangle AGC$ ,  $AC$  and  $CG$  are together greater than  $AG$  (Theor. 11)

or,  $AC$  and  $CG$  are together greater than  $2 AD$

$\therefore AC$  and  $AB$  are greater than  $2 AD$

Similarly,  $BA$  and  $BC$  are greater than  $2 BE$

and,  $CA$  and  $CB$  are greater than  $2 CF$

Summing up these three results, we have

$2 (AB + BC + CA)$  greater than  $2 (AD + BE + CF)$

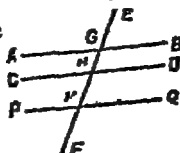
$\therefore (AB + BC + CA)$  is greater than  $(AD + BE + CF)$

or,  $(AD + BE + CF)$  is less than  $(AB + BC + CA)$

Q. E. D.

### Page 41.

1. Let  $AB$ ,  $CD$  and  $PQ$  be parallel to one another and let  $EF$  be a straight line cutting  $AB$ ,  $CD$ ,  $PQ$  at  $G$ ,  $H$ ,  $K$  respectively.



If the  $\angle EGB$  be  $55^\circ$

It is required to find each of the  $\angle^s$   $GHC$ ,  $HKQ$ ,  $QKF$  in degrees.

Because  $AB$  and  $CD$  are parallel and  $EF$  cuts them, therefore the ext.  $\angle EGB =$  the int. opp.  $\angle GHD$  on the same side of the line  $EF$  (Theor. 14)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle GHD = 55^\circ$

The  $\angle GHC$  is supplement of the  $\angle GHD$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle GHC = 180^\circ - 55^\circ = 125^\circ$ .

Because  $AB$  and  $PQ$  are parallel and  $EF$  cuts them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle EGB =$  the  $\angle GKQ$  or  $HKQ$  (Theor. 14)

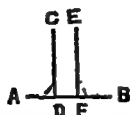
But the  $\angle EGB = 55^\circ$ ,  $\therefore$  the  $\angle HKQ = 55^\circ$ .

The  $\angle HKQ$  is supplement of the  $\angle QKF$

But the  $\angle HKQ = 55^\circ$ ,  $\therefore$  the  $\angle QKF = 180^\circ - 55^\circ = 125^\circ$ .



2. Let  $AB$  be a straight line and let  $CD, EF$  be any two straight lines perpendicular to  $AB$ .



It is required to prove that  $CD$  and  $EF$  are parallel.

Proof—Because  $AB$  cuts two straight lines  $CD$  and  $EF$  and it makes the interior angle  $CDF$  equal to the exterior angle  $EFB$

$\therefore CD$  and  $EF$  are parallel (Theor. 13)

Q. E. D.

3 Let the straight line  $GK$  cut three parallel straight lines  $AB, CD$  and  $EF$  at the points  $G, H$  and  $K$  respectively and let it be perpendicular to  $AB$  at  $G$ .



It is required to prove that  $GK$  is also perpendicular to  $ED$  and to  $EF$ .

Proof.—Because  $AB$  and  $DC$  are parallel and  $GK$  cuts them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle AGH =$  the alternate  $\angle GHD$  (Theor. 14)

But the  $\angle AGH =$  a rt.  $\angle$

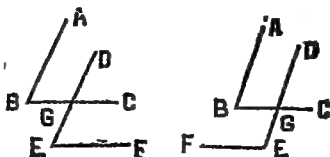
$\therefore$  the  $\angle GHD$  is a rt.  $\angle$

$\therefore$ ,  $e.$ ,  $GH$  is perpendicular to  $CD$ .

similarly, it can be proved that  $GK$  is perpendicular to  $EF$  and to any straight line parallel to  $EF$ .

Q. E. D.

4. Let  $ABC$  and  $DEF$  be any two angles whose arms are parallel, each to each, that is,  $AB$  is parallel to  $DE$  and  $BC$  parallel to  $EF$ .



It is required to prove that the angles  $ABC$  and  $DEF$  are either equal or supplementary.

Let  $BC$  and  $DE$  cut at  $G$ .

**Proof.**—In the first figure, because  $AB$  and  $GD$  are parallel and  $BC$  meets them

$\therefore$  the ext  $\angle DGC =$  the int. opp.  $\angle ABC$  (Theor. 13)

Again, because  $GC$  and  $EF$  are parallel and  $DE$  meets them

$\therefore$  the ext  $\angle DGC =$  the int. opp.  $\angle DEF$  (Theor. 13)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC =$  the  $\angle DEF$

In the second figure, because  $AB$  and  $DE$  are parallel and  $BC$  cuts them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC =$  the alternate  $\angle BGE$  (Theor. 13)

Again, because  $BG$  and  $EF$  are parallel and  $DE$  meets them

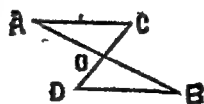
$\therefore$  the two int.  $\angle^s BGE$  and  $DEF$  are together equal to 2 rt.  $\angle^s$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s ABC$  and  $DEF$  together  $=$  2 rt.  $\angle^s$

i. e., the  $\angle^s ABC$  and  $DEF$  are supplementary.

Q. E. D.

5. Let  $AB$  and  $CD$  bisect one another at  $O$ .  
Join  $AC$  and  $BD$ .



It is required to prove that  $AC$  and  $BD$  are parallel.

**Proof.**—In the two  $\triangle^s AOC$  and  $DOB$

Because  $\begin{cases} AO = BO \text{ (given)} \\ OC = OD \text{ (given)} \\ \text{and the } \angle AOC = \text{the } \angle BOD \text{ (Theor. 2)} \end{cases}$

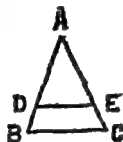
$\therefore$  the  $\Delta^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

so that, the  $\angle OAC = \text{the } \angle OBD$ , and these are alternate angles

$\therefore AC$  and  $BD$  are parallel (Theor. 14)

Q. E. D.

6. Let  $ABC$  be an isosceles triangle and let  $DE$  be any straight line parallel to  $BC$ .



It is required to prove that  $DE$  makes equal angles with  $AB$  and  $AC$ , i.e., the  $\angle ADE = \text{the } \angle AED$

Proof.—Because  $BC$  and  $DE$  are parallel and  $AB$  meets them

$\therefore$  the ext.  $\angle ADE = \text{the int. opp. } \angle ABC$  (Theor. 14)

Again, because  $BC$  and  $DE$  are parallel and  $AC$  meets them

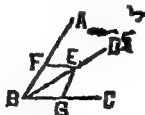
$\therefore$  the ext.  $\angle AED = \text{the int. opp. } \angle ACB$  (Theor. 14)

But the  $\angle ABC = \text{the } \angle ACB$  (Theor. 5)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ADE = \text{the } \angle AED$ .

Q. E. D.

7. Let  $ABC$  be an angle and let  $BD$  be its bisector.



From  $E$  any point in  $BD$  a straight line  $EF$  is drawn parallel to  $BC$  meeting  $AB$  at  $F$ .

It is required to prove that the  $\Delta BFE$  is an isosceles triangle.

**Proof.**—Because  $FE$  is parallel to  $BC$  and  $BD$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle FEB =$  the alternate  $\angle EBC$  (Theor. 14)

But the  $\angle FBE =$  the  $\angle EBC$  (given)

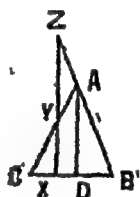
$\therefore$  the  $\angle FEB =$  the  $\angle FBE$

$\therefore FE = FB$  (Theor. 6)

i. e., the  $\triangle FBE$  is an isosceles triangle.

Similarly, by drawing  $EG$  parallel to  $AB$  it can be proved that the  $\triangle BGE$  is an isosceles triangle.

8 Let  $ABC$  be an isosceles triangle. From  $X$  any point in  $BC$ ,  $XZ$  is drawn perpendicular to  $BC$ , cutting  $AC$  in  $Y$  and meeting  $BA$  produced in  $Z$ .



It is required to prove that  $AYZ$  is an isosceles triangle.

The  $\angle BAC$  is bisected by  $AD$  meeting  $BC$  in  $D$ .

**Proof.**—In the  $\triangle^s ABD$  and  $ADC$

Because  $\begin{cases} AC = AB \text{ (being sides of an isosceles triangle)} \\ AD \text{ is common to both} \\ \text{and the } \angle BAD = \text{the } \angle CAD \text{ (by construction)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

so that, the  $\angle ADB =$  the  $\angle ADC$ , and these being adjacent angles each is a rt.  $\angle$ .

Since  $BC$  cuts  $AD$  and  $ZX$ , and makes the int  $\angle^s ADX$  and  $DXZ$  together equal to 2 rt.  $\angle^s$

$\therefore AD$  and  $ZX$  are parallel (Theor. 13)

Because  $AD$  and  $ZX$  are parallel and  $BZ$  meets them

$\therefore$  the ext.  $\angle BAD =$  the int. opp.  $\angle AZX$  or  $\angle ZY$  (Theor. 14)

Again, because  $DA$  and  $YZ$  are parallel and  $AY$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle DAY =$  the alternate  $\angle AYZ$  (Theor. 14)

But the  $\angle BAD =$  the  $\angle DAY$  or  $DAC$  (by construction)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle AZY =$  the  $\angle AYZ$

$\therefore AZ = AY$  (Theor. 6)

$\therefore \triangle AYZ$  is isosceles.

Q. E. D.

9 Let  $CE$  be the bisector of the exterior angle  $ACD$  of the triangle  $ABC$  which is drawn parallel to the opposite side  $AB$ .



It is required to prove that the triangle  $ABC$  is an isosceles triangle

Proof—Because  $AB$  and  $CE$  are parallel and  $BD$  meets them

$\therefore$  the ext  $\angle ECD =$  the int. opp.  $\angle ABC$  (Theor. 14)

Again, because  $AB$  and  $CE$  are parallel and  $AC$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle BAC =$  the alternate  $\angle ACE$  (Theor. 14)

But the  $\angle ECA =$  the  $\angle ECD$  (given)

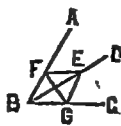
$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC =$  the  $\angle BAC$

$\therefore BC = AC$  (Theor. 6)

$\therefore \triangle ABC$  is an isosceles triangle.

Q. E. D.

10 Let  $ABC$  be an angle and let  $BD$  be its bisector. From  $E$  any point in  $BD$  the straight lines  $EF$  and  $EC$  are drawn parallel to  $BC$  and  $AB$  respectively meeting  $AB, BC$  at  $F$  and  $G$ .



It is required to prove that  $FE$  and  $EG$  are equal and that the figure  $FBGE$  is a rhombus.

Join  $FG$ .

Proof.—Because  $EF$  and  $BG$  are parallel and  $BE$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle FEB =$  the alternate  $\angle EBG$  (Theor. 14)

But the  $\angle EBC =$  the  $\angle EBA$  (given)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle FEB =$  the  $\angle EBF$

$\therefore FE = FB$  (Theor. 6)

Similarly, it can be proved that  $GE = GB$

Now, in the two  $\triangle^s EFG$  and  $FBG$

Because  $\begin{cases} EF = FB \text{ (proved)} \\ GE = GB \text{ (proved)} \\ \text{and } FG \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 7)

so that, the  $\angle FGE =$  the  $\angle BGF$

But the  $\angle FGE =$  the alternate  $\angle BFG$  (Theor. 14)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle BGF = \angle BFG$

$\therefore BG = BF$  (Theor. 6)

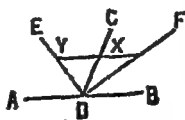
But  $BF = FE$  and  $BG = GE$

$\therefore BF = GF = BG = FE$

$\therefore$  the figure  $FBGE$  is a rhombus.

Q. E. D.

11. Let  $AB$  be a straight line and let  $CD$  be any straight line intersecting  $AB$  at  $D$ .  $DE$  and  $DF$  bisect the  $\angle^s$   $ADC$  and  $CDB$  respectively. Through  $X$  any point in  $DC$ ,  $YXZ$  is drawn parallel to  $AB$  and terminated by  $DE$  and  $DF$  at  $Y$  and  $Z$ .



It is required to prove that  $YX$  and  $XZ$  are equal.

**Proof**—Because  $YX$  and  $AD$  are parallel and  $YD$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle XYD =$  the alternate  $\angle YDA$  (Theor. 14)

But the  $\angle ADY =$  the  $\angle YDX$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle YDX =$  the  $\angle XYD$

$\therefore XD = YX$  (Theor. 6)

Similarly, it can be proved that  $XD = XZ$

$\therefore YX = XZ$

Q. E. D.

12 Two straight rods  $PA$  and  $QS$  start parallel and pointing the same way, and  $PA$  revolves more rapidly than  $QB$ . Then they will be again parallel

(1) pointing opposite ways when  $PA$  has made half a revolution more than  $QB$ ,

and (2) pointing the same way when  $PA$  has made one complete revolution more than  $QB$

Now,  $PA$  makes 12 complete revolutions in a minute and  $QB$  makes 10 complete revolutions in a minute.

$\therefore PA$  makes 2 complete revolutions more than  $QB$  in 1 min

(1)  $\therefore PA$  makes  $\frac{1}{2}$  revolution more than  $QB$  in  $\frac{1}{2}$  min. or 15 sec

(2)  $PA$  makes 2 complete revolutions more than  $QB$  in 1 min.

$\therefore PA$  makes 1 complete revolution more than  $QB$  in  $\frac{1}{2}$  min. or 30 sec.

$\therefore$  The two rods  $PA$  and  $QB$  will be again parallel,

(1) pointing opposite ways after 15 sec and (2) pointing the same way after 30 sec., when they start parallel and pointing the same way.

## Page 43.

1. We know that three angles of every triangle are together equal to 2 rt.  $\angle^s$  (Theor. 16)

We also know that in an equilateral triangle all the three angles are equal to one another

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \text{Each angle} &= \frac{1}{3} \text{ of } 2 \text{ rt. } \angle^s \\ &= \frac{1}{3} \text{ of } 180^\circ \\ &= 60^\circ.\end{aligned}$$

2 We know that three angles of every triangle are together equal to 2 rt.  $\angle^s$  (Theor. 16)

In a right angled isosceles triangle, one angle is a right angle.

$\therefore$  the sum of the other two angles is 2 rt.  $\angle^s$  - 1 rt.  $\angle$  or 1 rt.  $\angle$ .

But the equal sides of isosceles triangle subtend equal angles

$\therefore$  Each of the equal angles =  $\frac{1}{2}$  of 1 rt.  $\angle$  =  $45^\circ$ .

3. We know that three angles of every triangle are together equal to 2 rt.  $\angle^s$  (Theor. 16)

$$\text{The sum of two angles} = 360^\circ - 123^\circ = 159^\circ$$

$$\therefore \text{the third angle} = 180^\circ - 159^\circ = 21^\circ.$$

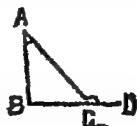
4. We know that three angles of every triangle are together equal to 2 rt.  $\angle^s$  (Theor. 16)

$$\therefore \text{In the } \triangle ABC, \text{ the } \angle^s \text{ } \angle ACB + \angle ABC + \angle BAC = 180^\circ$$

$$\text{But the } \angle^s \text{ } \angle ABC + \angle ACB = 111^\circ + 42^\circ = 153^\circ$$

$$\therefore \text{the } \angle \text{ } \angle BAC = 180^\circ - 153^\circ = 27^\circ.$$

5. ABC is a triangle whose side BC is produced to D.





If the exterior  $\angle ACD$  be  $134^\circ$  and the  $\angle BAC$  be  $42^\circ$

It is required to find the remaining interior angles  $ABC$  and  $ACB$

The  $\angle ACB$  is supplement of the  $\angle ACD$

the  $\angle ACD = 134^\circ$ ,  $\therefore$  the  $\angle ACB = 180^\circ - 134^\circ = 46^\circ$

Three angles of every triangle are together equal to 2 rt.  $\angle^s$  (Theor 16)

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \text{ the } \angle ABC &= 180^\circ - (\text{the } \angle^s BAC + ACB) \\ &= 180^\circ - (42^\circ + 46^\circ) \\ &= 180^\circ - 88^\circ \\ &= 92^\circ.\end{aligned}$$

6. (See Fig. in Ex 5).

$ABC$  is a triangle whose side  $BC$  is produced to  $D$

Let the exterior  $\angle ACD$  be  $118^\circ$  and the  $\angle ABC$  be  $51^\circ$ .

It is required to find the  $\angle^s BAC$  and  $ACB$ .

The  $\angle ACB$  is supplement of the  $\angle ACD$

But the  $\angle ACD = 118^\circ$ ,  $\therefore$  the  $\angle ACB = 180^\circ - 118^\circ = 62^\circ$

The sum of the  $\angle^s ACB$  and  $ABC = 62^\circ + 51^\circ = 113^\circ$

Three angles of every triangle = 2 rt.  $\angle^s$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \text{ the } \angle BAC &= 180^\circ - 113^\circ \\ &= 67^\circ.\end{aligned}$$

7. Let  $ABC$  be a triangle and let  $DAE$  be parallel to the base  $BC$  drawn



through the vertex  $A$ .

It is required to prove that the three angles of the triangle  $ABC$  are together equal to 2 rt.  $\angle^s$

Proof.—Because  $DE$  and  $BC$  are parallel and  $AC$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle EAC$  = the alternate  $\angle ACB$  (Theor. 14)

Again, because  $DE$  and  $BC$  are parallel and  $AB$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle DAB$  = the alternate  $\angle ABC$  (Theor. 14) -

$\therefore$  the  $\angle EAC$  + the  $\angle DAB$  = the  $\angle ACB$  + the  $\angle ABC$

To each of these equals add in  $\angle BAC$

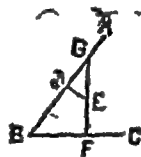
$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC$  + the  $\angle BAC$  + the  $\angle ACB$

= the  $\angle DAB$  + the  $\angle BAC$  + the  $\angle EAC$

= 2 rt.  $\angle^s$  (Theor. 1)

Q. E. D.

8. Let  $AB, BC$  be any two straight lines cutting at  $B$ , and let  $ED, EF$  be two other straight lines perpendicular to  $AB, BC$  respectively.



It is required to prove that the acute angle between  $AB, BC$  is equal to the acute angle between  $ED, EF$ .

Produce  $FE$  to meet  $AB$  in  $G$ .

Proof.—Because in the  $\triangle GDE$ , the  $\angle GDE$  is a rt.  $\angle$

$\therefore$  the sum of the  $\angle^s$   $DEG$  and  $DGE$  is also a rt.  $\angle$

i. e., the  $\angle DGE$  is complement of the  $\angle DEG$  (Theor. 16. Inf. 3)

Again, because in the  $\triangle GBF$ ,  $\angle GFB$  is a rt.  $\angle$

$\therefore$  the sum of the  $\angle^s$   $GBF$  and  $BGF$  is also a rt.  $\angle$

i. e., the  $\angle GBF$  is complement of the  $\angle BGF$ , or  $DGE$   
(Theor. 16. Inf. 3)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle DEG$  = the  $\angle GBF$  (Cor. 3. Theor. 1)

= the  $\angle ABC$

Q. E. D.

## Page 45.

1. Suppose  $\triangle ABC$  is a triangle in which the angle  $\angle ABC$  is double and the angle  $\angle ACB$  treble of the angle  $\angle BAC$ .

It is required to find each of the angles  $\angle ABC$ ,  $\angle ACB$  and  $\angle BAC$  in degrees.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{The } \angle BAC + \text{the } \angle ABC + \text{the } \angle ACB \\ = \angle BAC + 2 \angle BAC + 3 \angle BAC \\ = 6 \angle BAC. \end{aligned}$$

But the  $\angle BAC + \text{the } \angle ABC + \text{the } \angle ACB = 180^\circ$   
(Theor. 16 Int. 1)

$$\therefore 6 \angle BAC = 180^\circ$$

$$\therefore \angle BAC = 30^\circ, \angle ABC = 2 \times 30^\circ, \text{ or } 60^\circ, \text{ and } \angle ACB = 3 \times 30^\circ, \text{ or } 90^\circ.$$

2 In an isosceles triangle  $\triangle ABC$  the angles subtended by equal sides are equal (i) Each of the base angles  $\angle ABC$  and  $\angle ACB$  is double of the vertical angle  $\angle BAC$

It is required to find each of the angles  $\angle ABC$ ,  $\angle ACB$  and  $\angle BAC$  in degrees

$$\begin{aligned} \text{the } \angle BAC + \text{the } \angle ABC + \text{the } \angle ACB \\ = \angle BAC + 2 \angle BAC + 2 \angle BAC \\ = 5 \angle BAC \end{aligned}$$

But the  $\angle BAC$ ,  $\angle ABC$  and  $\angle ACB = 180^\circ$  (Theor. 16. Int. 1)

$$\therefore 5 \angle BAC = 180^\circ$$

$$\therefore \angle BAC = 36^\circ, \angle ABC = 2 \times 36^\circ \text{ or } 72^\circ, \text{ and } \angle ACB = 72^\circ$$

(ii) Each of the base angles  $\angle ABC$  and  $\angle ACB$  is four times the vertical angle  $\angle BAC$ .

It is required to find each of the angles  $\angle ABC$ ,  $\angle ACB$  and  $\angle BAC$  in degrees.

$$\begin{aligned} \angle BAC + \angle ABC + \angle ACB = \angle BAC + 4 \angle BAC + 4 \angle BAC \\ = 9 \angle BAC \end{aligned}$$

But  $\angle BAC + \angle ABC + \angle ACB = 180^\circ$  (Theor. 16. Inf. 1)

$$\therefore 9 \angle BAC = 180^\circ$$

or,  $\angle BAC = 20^\circ$ ,  $\angle ABC = 4 \times 20^\circ$ , or  $80^\circ$  and  $\angle ACB = 80^\circ$

3. Let DE be a straight line. Take any two points B and C in DE. At B and C make  $\angle^s$  EBA and DCA =  $94^\circ$  and  $126^\circ$  respectively, the sides BA and CA meeting in A.



It is required to find the vertical angle BAC.

Because the  $\angle^s$  ABE and ABC together = 2 rt.  $\angle^s$  (Theor. 1)

the  $\angle ABE = 94^\circ$ ;  $\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC = 180^\circ - 94^\circ = 86^\circ$

the exterior  $\angle ACD =$  ant. opp.  $\angle^s$  ABC and BAC.

the  $\angle ADC = 126^\circ$  and the  $\angle ABC = 86^\circ$  (Obs. Theor. 16)

$$\therefore \text{the } \angle BAC = 126^\circ - 86^\circ = 40^\circ.$$

4. In a triangle ABC, the sum of the base angles ABC and ACB is  $162^\circ$  and their difference is  $60^\circ$ .

It is required to find all the angles ABC, ACB and BAC of the triangle ABC.

Suppose the  $\angle ABC$  is greater than the  $\angle ACB$

Because the  $\angle ABC +$  the  $\angle ACB = 162^\circ$

and the  $\angle ABC -$  the  $\angle ACB = 60^\circ$

$$\therefore \text{by adding we have } 2 \angle ABC = 162^\circ + 60^\circ = 222^\circ$$

$$\therefore \angle ABC = \frac{1}{2} \cdot 222^\circ = 111^\circ$$

and by subtracting we have  $2 \angle ACB = 162^\circ - 60^\circ = 102^\circ$

$$\therefore \angle ACB = \frac{1}{2} \cdot 102^\circ = 51^\circ.$$

Again, because the  $\angle^s ABC + ACB + BAC = 180^\circ$

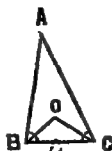
Inf. 1 Theor. 16)

$$\therefore \text{the } \angle BAC = 180^\circ - (ABC + ACB)$$

$$= 180^\circ - 162^\circ$$

$$= 18^\circ$$

5. Let  $\triangle ABC$  be a triangle in which the angles  $\angle ABC$  and  $\angle ACB$  are equal to  $84^\circ$  and  $62^\circ$ , respectively and the angles  $\angle ABC$  and  $\angle ACB$  are bisected by the lines  $BO$ ,  $CO$  meeting at  $O$



It is required to find the  $\angle^s \angle BAC$  and  $\angle BOC$

In the  $\triangle ABC$ , the  $\angle^s \angle ABC + \angle ACB + \angle BAC = 180^\circ$

(Theor. 16. Inf. 1)

the  $\angle \angle ABC = 84^\circ$  and the  $\angle \angle ACB = 62^\circ$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \text{the } \angle \angle BAC &= 180^\circ - (\angle \angle ABC + \angle \angle ACB) \\ &= 180^\circ - (84^\circ + 62^\circ) \\ &= 180^\circ - 146^\circ \\ &= 34^\circ \end{aligned}$$

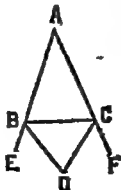
the  $\angle \angle OBC = \frac{1}{2} \angle \angle ABC = \frac{1}{2} \cdot 84^\circ = 42^\circ$

and the  $\angle \angle OCB = \frac{1}{2} \angle \angle ACB = \frac{1}{2} \cdot 62^\circ = 31^\circ$

In the  $\triangle OBC$ , the  $\angle^s \angle OBC + \angle OCB + \angle BOC = 180^\circ$  (Theor. 16. Inf. 1)

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \text{the } \angle \angle BOC &= 180^\circ - (\angle \angle OBC + \angle \angle OCB) \\ &= 180^\circ - (42^\circ + 31^\circ) \\ &= 180^\circ - 73^\circ \\ &= 107^\circ \end{aligned}$$

6. Let  $BC$  be a straight line. At  $B$  make the angle  $\angle CBA = 74^\circ$  and at  $C$  make the angle  $\angle BCA = 62^\circ$ , the sides  $BA$ ,  $CA$  meeting in  $A$ . Produce  $AB$  and  $AC$  to any points  $E$  and  $F$  respectively. Let the bisectors  $BO$ ,  $CO$  of the exterior angles  $\angle CBE$  and  $\angle BCF$  meet in  $O$ .



It is required to find the  $\angle \angle BOC$ .

the  $\angle^s \angle ABC$  and  $\angle CBE = 2 \text{ rt } \angle^s = 180^\circ$  (Theor. 1)

But the  $\angle \angle ABC = 74^\circ$ ,  $\therefore$  the  $\angle \angle CBE = 180^\circ - 74^\circ = 106^\circ$

the,  $\angle CBO = \frac{1}{2} \angle CBE = \frac{1}{2} \times 106^\circ = 53^\circ$

also, the  $\angle^s ACB$  and  $BCF = 2$  rt.  $\angle^s = 180^\circ$  (Theor. 1)

But the  $\angle ACB = 62^\circ \therefore$  the  $\angle BCF = 180^\circ - 62^\circ = 118^\circ$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle BCO = \frac{1}{2} \angle BCF = \frac{1}{2} \times 118^\circ = 59^\circ$ .

In the  $\triangle BCO$ , the  $\angle^s BCO + OBC + BOC = 180^\circ$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle BOC = 180^\circ - (\angle BCO + \angle CBO)$  (Theor. 16.

Inf. 1)

$$= 180^\circ - (59^\circ + 53^\circ)$$

$$= 180^\circ - 112^\circ$$

$$= 68^\circ.$$

7. In a quadrilateral the sum of all the angles is 4 rt.  $\angle^s$ , because by joining any of its diagonal, the figure (quadrilateral) is divided into two triangles and we know the sum of all angles of a triangle to be 2 rt.  $\angle^s$  (Theor. 16).

the sum of three angles  $= 114\frac{1}{2}^\circ + 50^\circ + 77\frac{1}{2}^\circ = 240^\circ$

the sum of four angles of a quadrilateral  $= 4$  rt.  $\angle^s = 360^\circ$

$\therefore$  the fourth angle  $= 360^\circ - 240^\circ = 120^\circ$ .

8 In a quadrilateral ABCD, the  $\angle ABC = 2 \angle BAD$ , the  $\angle DCB = 3 \angle BAD$  and the  $\angle ADC = 4 \angle BAD$ .

the  $\angle BAD + \angle ABC + \angle DCB + \angle ADC$

$$= \angle BAD + 2 \angle BAD + 3 \angle BAD + 4 \angle BAD$$

$$= 10 \angle BAD$$

But the  $\angle BAD + \angle ABC + \angle DCB + \angle ADC = 360^\circ$

$$\therefore 10 \angle BAD = 360^\circ$$

$\therefore \angle BAD = 36^\circ$ ,  $\angle ABC = 2 \times 36^\circ = 72^\circ$ ;

$$\angle DCB = 3 \times 36^\circ = 108^\circ, \text{ and } \angle ADC = 4 \times 36^\circ = 144^\circ$$

9. All the interior angles of a pentagon  $= 4$  rt.  $\angle^s = 10$  rt.  $\angle^s$  (Cor. 1. Theor. 16)

$\therefore$  all the interior angles of the pentagon  $= 10$  rt.  $\angle^s = 4$  rt.  $\angle^s = 6$  rt.  $\angle^s = 540^\circ$ .

the sum of four angles of the pentagon  $= 40^\circ + 78^\circ + 122^\circ + 135^\circ = 375^\circ$

$\therefore$  the fifth angle  $= 540^\circ - 375^\circ = 165^\circ$

10. It is required to prove that in any regular polygon of  $n$  sides each angle contains  $\frac{2(n-2)}{n}$  right angles.

(i) Because all the interior angles of any rectilinear figure of  $n$  sides  $+ 4 \text{ rt } \angle^s = 2n \text{ rt } \angle^s$  (Cor. 1 Theor. 16)

$$\therefore \text{all the interior angles} = 2n \text{ rt } \angle^s - 4 \text{ rt } \angle^s \\ = 2(n-2) \text{ rt } \angle^s$$

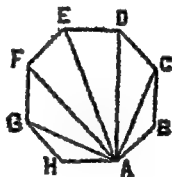
We know that in any figure there are as many angles as there are sides

$\therefore$  a figure containing  $n$  sides has  $n$  angles

$$\therefore n \text{ angles} = 2(n-2) \text{ rt } \angle^s$$

$$\therefore \text{each angle} = \frac{2(n-2)}{n} \text{ rt. } \angle^s$$

(ii) Let  $ABCDEFGH$  be a regular polygon of  $n$  sides and hence having all its angles equal.



By joining one vertex  $A$  to each of the others (except the two immediately adjacent to  $A$ ), that is, by joining  $AC, AD, AE, AF, \dots$ , the figure will be divided into  $(n-2)$  triangles

Because in every triangle the sum of three angles  $= 2 \text{ rt. } \angle^s$  (Theor. 16)

$$\therefore \text{all the angles of } (n-2) \text{ triangles} = 2(n-2) \text{ rt } \angle^s$$

$$\therefore \text{all the angles of the polygon } ABCDEFGH \\ = 2(n-2) \text{ rt. } \angle^s.$$

We know that there are as many angles as the figure has sides.

$\therefore$  a polygon of  $n$  sides has  $n$  angles; and the value of  $n$  angles  $= 2(n-2)$  rt.  $\angle$ 's

$\therefore$  each angle of the polygon  $ABCDEFGH = \frac{2(n-2)}{n}$  rt. angles.

11. It is required to find the number of sides in the regular polygons each of whose angles is (i)  $108^\circ$ , and (ii)  $156^\circ$ .

Because  $nD + 360^\circ = n \cdot 180^\circ$ , where  $D$  denotes the number of degrees in an angle of a regular polygon of  $n$  sides (Theor. 16. Cor. 1)

$$(i) \therefore n \cdot 108^\circ + 360^\circ = n \cdot 180^\circ$$

$$\text{or, } n(180^\circ - 108^\circ) = 360^\circ$$

$$\text{or, } n \cdot 72^\circ = 360^\circ$$

$$\therefore n = \frac{360^\circ}{72^\circ} = 5.$$

*i. e.*, the figure has 5 sides.

$$\text{and (ii) } n \cdot 156^\circ + 360^\circ = n \cdot 180^\circ$$

$$\text{or } n \cdot 180^\circ - 156^\circ = 360^\circ$$

$$\text{or } n \cdot 24^\circ = 360^\circ$$

$$\therefore n = \frac{360^\circ}{24^\circ} = 15$$

*i. e.*, the figure contains 15 sides.

12 Regular figures can be fitted together so as to form a plane surface only when the sum of the consecutive angles formed at any point within that plane by placing them together is equal to four right angles.

But since each of the regular figures has the same number of sides, therefore the consecutive angles so formed at that point are all equal to one another.



$\therefore$  each of these consecutive angles must be a factor of four right angles, or  $360^\circ$ .

since a (regular) figure must have at least three sides, therefore the least value of an angle of a regular polygon is  $60^\circ$ .

Also the angle of a regular polygon must in every case be less than  $180^\circ$ .

$\therefore$  the magnitude of the angles of all such polygons lie between  $60$  and  $180^\circ$ , including the former and excluding the latter.

Again, because the factors of  $360^\circ$  lying between  $60^\circ$  and  $180^\circ$  (including  $60^\circ$ , and excluding  $180^\circ$ ) are  $60^\circ$ ,  $72^\circ$ ,  $90^\circ$  and  $120^\circ$ , and of these factors  $72^\circ$  is not the value of an angle of any regular polygon

$\therefore$  the regular figures, which can be fitted together so as to form a plane surface, must have the value of their angles  $60^\circ$ ,  $90^\circ$  or  $120^\circ$ , that is, they must be equilateral triangles, squares, or regular hexagons.

Page 47.

1. Because all the exterior angles of any rectilineal figure  $= 4 \text{ rt } \angle^s$  (Theor. 16, Cor 2)

and all the angles of a regular polygon are equal

$\therefore$  each of the exterior angles of a regular polygon of six sides  $= \frac{1}{6}$  of a rt.  $\angle = \frac{1}{6}$  of  $90^\circ$ , or  $15^\circ$ .

But each of the interior angles of an equilateral triangle  $= \frac{180^\circ}{3} = 60^\circ$

$\therefore$  the ext. angle of a regular hexagon  $=$  the int. angle of an equilateral triangle

2. Because all the exterior angles of any rectilineal figure  $= 4 \text{ rt } \angle^s$  (Theor. 16 Cor. 2)

and all the angles of a regular polygon are equal

(1)  $\therefore$  Each of the exterior angles of a regular octagon (of eight sides)  $= \frac{1}{8}$  of a rt.  $\angle = \frac{1}{8}$  of  $90^\circ$ , or  $11\frac{1}{4}^\circ$

and, (ii) each of the exterior angles of a regular decagon (10 sides)  $= \frac{1}{10}$  of a rt  $\angle = \frac{1}{10}$  of  $90^\circ$ , or  $36^\circ$ .

3. Suppose the figure contains  $n$  sides, then there are  $n$  equal exterior angles (because the figure is regular)

(i) the value of each ext. angle  $= 30^\circ$

$$\therefore n \cdot 30^\circ = 4 \text{ rt. } \angle^s = 360^\circ$$

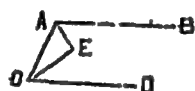
$$\therefore n = \frac{360^\circ}{30^\circ} = 12.$$

(ii) the value of each ext. angle  $= 24^\circ$

$$\therefore n \cdot 24^\circ = 4 \text{ rt. } \angle^s = 360^\circ$$

$$\therefore n = \frac{360}{24} = 15.$$

4. Let AO meet two parallel straight lines AB, OD and let the two interior angles BAO and AOD on the same side of AO be bisected by AE and OE respectively, meeting at E.



It is required to show that the  $\angle AEO$  is a rt.  $\angle$ .

Proof.—Because AB and OD are parallel and AO meets them

$$\therefore \text{the int. } \angle^s \text{ BAO and AOD} = 2 \text{ rt. } \angle^s \quad (\text{Theor. 14})$$

the  $\angle OAE = \frac{1}{2}$  of the  $\angle BAO$ ; and the  $\angle AOE = \frac{1}{2}$  of the  $\angle AOD$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \text{the } \angle^s \text{ OAE and AOE} &= \frac{1}{2} \text{ of } \angle^s \text{ BAO and AOD} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \text{ of } 2 \text{ rt. } \angle^s \\ &= 1 \text{ rt. } \angle. \end{aligned}$$

In any triangle the sum of the three angles  $= 2 \text{ rt. } \angle^s$   
(Theor. 16)

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \text{in the } \triangle AOE, \text{ the } \angle AEO &= 2 \text{ rt. } \angle^s - (\angle^s \text{ OAE} \\ &\quad + \angle^s \text{ AOE}) \\ &= 2 \text{ rt. } \angle^s - 1 \text{ rt. } \angle \\ &= 1 \text{ rt. } \angle \end{aligned}$$

i.e., the bisectors of the  $\angle^s$  BAO and AOD meet at right angles.

Q E D.

5. (See Fig. in Ex. 3 on p. 45).

Let ABC be a triangle whose base BC is produced bothways to points D and E.

It is required to prove that the exterior  $\angle^s$  ACD + ABE—the vertical angle BAC = 2 rt  $\angle^s$

Proof—The ext.  $\angle$  ACD = the int  $\angle^s$  ABC + BAC

(Obs Theor 16)

also, the ext.  $\angle$  ABE = the int.  $\angle^s$  ACB + BAC

(Obs. Theor 16)

By adding we have

the  $\angle^s$  ACD + ABE =  $\angle^s$  ABC + BAC + ACB + BAC

or,  $\angle$  ACD +  $\angle$  ABE —  $\angle$  BAC =  $\angle$  ABC +  $\angle$  BAC +  $\angle$  ACB  
= 2 rt  $\angle^s$  (Theor. 16)

i.e., the ext  $\angle^s$  ACD + ABE—the vertical angle BAC = 2 rt.  $\angle^s$ .

Q E D.

6. (See Fig. in Ex 5 on p. 45)

Let ABC be a triangle and let the base angles ABC and ACB be bisected by BO and CO meeting at O.

It is required to show that the  $\angle$  BOC =  $90^\circ + \frac{\angle BAC}{2}$

Proof.—the  $\angle$  OBC =  $\frac{\angle ABC}{2}$ , and the  $\angle$  OCB =  $\frac{\angle ACB}{2}$

In the  $\triangle$  OBC, the  $\angle^s$  OBC + OCB + BOC =  $180^\circ$ .

(Inf. 1 Theor. 16)

or, the  $\angle$  BOC +  $\frac{\angle ABC}{2} + \frac{\angle ACB}{2} = 180^\circ \dots (1)$

In the  $\triangle$  ABC, the  $\angle^s$  ABC + ACB + BAC =  $180^\circ$

(Inf. 1, Theor. 16)

$$\therefore \frac{\angle ABC}{2} + \frac{\angle ACB}{2} + \frac{\angle BAC}{2} = \frac{1}{2} \cdot 180^\circ = 90^\circ \dots (2)$$

Subtracting (2) from (1) we have

$$\angle BOC - \frac{\angle BAC}{2} = 180^\circ - 90^\circ = 90^\circ$$

$$\therefore \angle BOC = 90^\circ + \frac{\angle BAC}{2}$$

Q. E. D.

7. (See fig. in Ex. 6 on p. 45).

Let  $ABC$  be a triangle whose sides  $AB$  and  $AC$  are produced to any points  $E$  and  $F$  respectively. Let the exterior angles  $CBE$  and  $BCF$  be bisected by  $BO$  and  $CO$  meeting at  $O$ .

It is required to show that the angle  $BOC = 90^\circ - \frac{\angle BAC}{2}$

Proof—In the  $\triangle OBC$ , the  $\angle$ s  $OBC + BOC + OCB = 180^\circ$

$$\therefore 2 \angle OBC + 2 \angle OCB + 2 \angle BOC = 360^\circ \text{ [Theor. 16]}$$

$$\text{or, } \angle CBE + \angle BCF + 2 \angle BOC = 360^\circ \dots (1)$$

$$\angle EBC + \angle ABC + \angle BCF + \angle BCA = 360^\circ \dots (2)$$

subtracting (2) from (1), we have [Theor. 1]

$$2 \angle BOC - \angle ABC - \text{the } \angle ACB = 0$$

$$\text{or, } 2 \angle BOC = \angle ABC + \angle ACB$$

In the  $\triangle ABC$ , the  $\angle ABC + \text{the } \angle BAC + \text{the } \angle ACB = 180^\circ$  (Int. 1. Theor. 16)

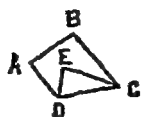
$$\therefore \angle ABC + \angle ACB = 180^\circ - \angle BAC$$

$$\therefore 2 \angle BOC = 180^\circ - \text{the } \angle BAC$$

$$\text{or, } \angle BOC = 90^\circ - \frac{\angle BAC}{2}$$

Q. E. D.

8. Let  $ABCD$  be any quadrilateral and let any two consecutive angles  $ADC$  and  $BCD$  be bisected by  $DE$  and  $CE$  respectively, meeting at  $E$ .



It is required to show that the angle  $DEC = \frac{1}{2}(\angle DAB + \angle ABC)$

Proof—In the  $\triangle DEC$ ,  $\angle DEC + \angle EDC + \angle ECD = 180^\circ$   
(Theor. 16. Iuf. 1)

$$\therefore 2 \angle DEC + 2 \angle EDC + 2 \angle ECD = 360^\circ$$

$$\text{or, } 2 \angle DEC + \angle ADC + \angle BCD = 360^\circ \dots (1)$$

In the quadrilateral  $ABCD$ ,  $\angle ABC + \angle BCD + \angle CDA + \angle DAB = 360^\circ \dots (2)$

Subtracting (2) from (1), we have

$$2 \angle DEC - \angle DAB - \angle ABC = 0$$

$$\text{or, } 2 \angle DEC = \angle DAB + \angle ABC$$

$$\therefore \angle DEC = \frac{1}{2}(\angle DAB + \angle ABC).$$

Q. E. D.

9. Let  $ABC$  be an isosceles triangle whose vertex is  $A$  and whose equal sides are  $AB$ ,  $AC$ , and the side  $BA$  is produced to any point  $D$  making  $AD$  equal to  $BA$ . Join  $DC$ .



It is required to show that  $\angle BCD$  is a right angle.

Proof—Because  $AB = AC$  (given)

$$\therefore \angle ABC = \angle ACB \text{ (Theor. 5)}$$

Again, because  $AC = AD$

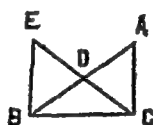
$$\therefore \angle ACD = \angle ADC \text{ (Theor. 5)}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore \angle ACD + \angle ACB &= \text{the } \angle DBC + \text{the } \angle BDC \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \text{ of } 2 \text{ rt. } \angle^s \\
 &= 1 \text{ rt. } \angle
 \end{aligned}$$

or, the  $\angle BCD$  is a rt.  $\angle$

Q. E. D.

10 Let  $ABC$  be a right-angled triangle, right angled at  $C$ . The hypotenuse  $AB$  is bisected at  $D$  and  $CD$  is joined.



It is required to prove that  $CD = \frac{1}{2} AB$ .

Produce  $CD$  to any point  $E$  making  $DE = CD$ . Join  $BE$ .

Proof—In the two  $\triangle^s ADC$  and  $DEB$

Because  $\begin{cases} AD = DB \text{ (given)} \\ DC = DE \text{ (by construction)} \\ \text{and the } \angle ADC = \text{the } \angle EDB \end{cases} \quad (\text{Theor. 3})$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

so that, the  $\angle DAC = \text{the } \angle EBD$ , and  $AC = BE$

In the  $\triangle ABC$ , the  $\angle ACB$  is a rt  $\angle$ .

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s BAC + ABC = 1 \text{ rt. } \angle$  (Inf. 3. Theor. 16)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s EBD + ABC = 1 \text{ rt. } \angle$

or, the  $\angle EBC$  is a rt  $\angle$

In the  $\triangle^s ABC$  and  $EBC$

Because  $\begin{cases} AC = BE \text{ (proved)} \\ BC \text{ is common to both} \\ \text{and the } \angle ACB = \text{the } \angle EBC \text{ (being rt. } \angle^s) \end{cases}$

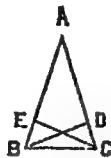
$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

so that,  $AB = EC$

But  $DE = \frac{1}{2} EC$ ,  $\therefore DC = \frac{1}{2} AB$ .

Q. E. D.

1 Let  $ABC$  be an isosceles triangle whose equal sides are  $AB$  and  $AC$ . From  $B$  and  $C$  perpendiculars  $BD$  and  $CE$  are drawn to  $AC$  and  $AB$  respectively.



It is required to prove that  $BD$  and  $CE$  are equal.

Proof—In the  $\triangle ABC$ , because  $AB = AC$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC = \angle ACB$  (Theor. 5)

In the two  $\triangle^s BDC$  and  $ECB$

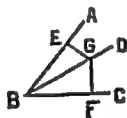
Because  $\begin{cases} \text{the } \angle BDC = \text{the } \angle CEB \text{ (being rt } \angle^s) \\ \text{the } \angle DCB = \text{the } \angle ECB \text{ (proved)} \\ \text{and } BC \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects. (Theor. 17)

so that,  $BD = CE$ .

Q. E. D.

2 Let  $ABC$  be an angle and let  $BD$  be its bisector. From any point  $G$  on  $BD$  perpendiculars  $GE$  and  $GF$  are drawn to  $AB$  and  $BC$  respectively.



It is required to prove that  $EG$  and  $GF$  are equal.

Proof—In the two  $\triangle^s EBG$  and  $BGF$

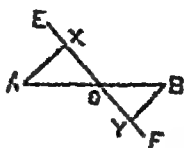
Because  $\begin{cases} \text{the } \angle GEB = \text{the } \angle GFB \text{ (being rt } \angle^s) \\ \text{the } \angle EBG = \text{the } \angle GBF \text{ (given)} \\ \text{and } BG \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 17)

so that,  $EG = GF$ .

Q. E. D.

3. Let  $AB$  be a straight line whose middle point is  $O$ , and let  $EOF$  be another straight line drawn through  $O$  From  $A$  and  $B$  perpendiculars  $AX, BY$  are drawn on  $EF$ .



It is required to prove that  $AX$  and  $BY$  are equal.

Proof.—In the two  $\triangle^s AXO$  and  $BYO$

Because  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the } \angle AXO = \text{the } \angle BYO \text{ (being rt. } \angle^s) \\ \text{the } \angle XOA = \text{the } \angle BOY \text{ (Theor. 3)} \\ \text{and } AO = BO \text{ (given)} \end{array} \right.$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 17)

so that,  $AX = BY$ .

4. (See Fig. in Ex. 1 on p. 19).

Let  $ABC$  be a triangle and let the bisector  $AD$  of the vertical angle  $BAC$  meet the base  $BC$  at right angles in  $D$ .

It is required to prove that  $ABC$  is an isosceles triangle.

Proof.—In the two  $\triangle^s ABD$  and  $ACD$

Because  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the } \angle ADB = \text{the } \angle ADC \text{ (being rt. } \angle^s) \\ \text{the } \angle BAD = \text{the } \angle CAD \text{ (given)} \\ \text{and } AD \text{ is common to both} \end{array} \right.$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 17)

so that,  $AB = AC$

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle ABC$  is isosceles.

Q. E. D.

5. (See Fig. in Ex. 1 on p. 19).

Let  $ABC$  be a triangle and let the perpendicular  $AD$  drawn from the vertex  $A$  bisect the base  $BC$ .

It is required to prove that  $ABC$  is an isosceles triangle.

Proof.—In the two  $\triangle^s ABD$  and  $ACD$



Because  $\begin{cases} BD=DC \text{ (given)} \\ AD \text{ is common to both} \\ \text{and the } \angle ADB = \text{the } \angle ADC \text{ (being rt. } \angle^s) \end{cases}$

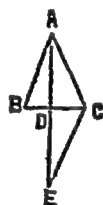
$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

so that,  $AB=AC$ .

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle ABC$  is isosceles.

Q. E. D.

6 Let  $ABC$  be a triangle and let  $AD$  the bisector of the vertical angle  $BAC$  bisect the base  $BC$ .



It is required to prove that  $ABC$  is an isosceles triangle.

Produce  $AD$  to any point  $E$  making  $DE=AD$ . Join  $EC$ .

Proof—In the two  $\triangle^s ABD$  and  $DEC$

Because  $\begin{cases} AD=DE \text{ (by construction)} \\ BD=DC \text{ (given)} \\ \text{and the } \angle ADB = \text{the } \angle CDE \text{ (Theor. 3)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

so that,  $AB=CE$ , and the  $\angle BAD = \text{the } \angle DEC$

But the  $\angle BAD = \text{the } \angle CAD$  (given)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle CAD = \text{the } \angle DEC$

or, the  $\angle CAE = \text{the } \angle AEC$

$\therefore AC=CE$  (Theor. 6)

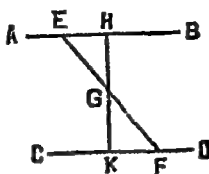
But  $AB=CE$  (proved)

$\therefore AB=AC$

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle ABC$  is isosceles.

Q. E. D.

7 Let the straight line  $EF$  meet two parallel straight lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$  and be terminated by them at  $E$  and  $F$ . Let  $G$  be the middle point of  $EF$ .



It is required to prove that  $G$  is equidistant from  $AB$  and  $CD$ .

From  $G$  draw  $GH$  perpendicular to  $BA$  and produce  $HG$  to meet  $CD$  in  $K$ . Then  $HK$  is also perpendicular to  $CD$ .

Proof—In the two  $\triangle^s$   $HGE$  and  $GFK$

Because  $\begin{cases} EG = GF \text{ (given)} \\ \text{the } \angle HGE = \text{the } \angle F GK \text{ (Theor. 3)} \\ \text{and the } \angle EHG = \text{the } \angle GKH \text{ (being rt. } \angle^s) \end{cases}$

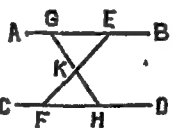
$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 17)

so that,  $HG = GK$

$\therefore G$  is equidistant from  $AB$  and  $CD$ .

Q. E. D.

8. Let the straight line  $EF$  be drawn between two parallel straight lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$  and be terminated by them. Let the straight line  $EF$  be bisected at  $K$ , and let another straight line  $GH$  be drawn through  $K$  and terminated by the parallel straight lines.



It is required to prove that  $GK = KH$

Proof—In the two  $\triangle^s$   $GKE$  and  $FKH$

Because  $\begin{cases} \text{the } \angle GKE = \text{the } \angle FKH \text{ (Theor. 3)} \\ \text{the } \angle EGK = \text{the alt. } \angle KHF \text{ (Theor. 14)} \\ \text{and } EK = KF \text{ (given)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor 17)

so that,  $GK = KH$

2. e, the straight line  $GH$  passing through  $K$  the middle point of  $EF$  and terminated by the parallel straight lines  $AB, CD$  is bisected at  $K$ .

Q E D

9. (See. Fig in Ex. 8)

Let  $AB, CD$  be two parallel straight lines, let  $EF$  be any straight line terminated by the parallel straight lines and let  $K$  be its middle point.

Then  $K$  is equidistant from the two parallel straight lines  $AB, CD$ .

Let  $GKH$  be another straight line drawn through  $K$  and terminated by the parallels.

It is required to prove that  $GE = FH$ .

Proof—In the two  $\triangle^s$   $GKE$  and  $KFH$

Bécause  $\begin{cases} KE = KF \\ \text{the } \angle GKE = \text{the } \angle FKH \text{ (Theor 3)} \\ \text{and the } \angle GEK = \text{the alt. HFK (Theor 14)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 17)

so that,  $GE = FH$ .

Q. E. D.

10 Let  $ABCD$  be a quadrilateral in which  $AB = AD$  and  $BC = CD$  Join  $AC$  and  $BD$  and let them cut at  $E$



It is required to prove that (1)  $AC$  bisects the angles  $BAD$  and  $BCD$ , and (2)  $AC$  is perpendicular to  $BD$ .

Proof.—(1) In the two  $\triangle^s$   $ABC$  and  $ADC$

Because  $\begin{cases} AB=AD \text{ (given)} \\ BC=CD \text{ (given)} \\ \text{and } AC \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  the two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 7)  
so that, the  $\angle BAC = \text{the } \angle CAD$ , and the  $\angle ACB = \text{the } \angle ACD$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s$   $BAD$  and  $BCD$  are bisected by  $AC$ .

(vi) In the two  $\triangle^s$   $ABE$  and  $AED$

Because  $\begin{cases} AB=AD \text{ (given)} \\ AE \text{ is common to both} \\ \text{and the } \angle BAE = \text{the } \angle DAE \text{ (proved)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

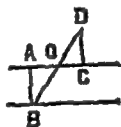
so that the  $\angle AEB = \text{the } \angle AED$ , and these being adjacent angles each is a right angle.

$\therefore$   $AE$  is perpendicular to  $BD$

$\therefore$   $AC$  is perpendicular to  $BD$ .

Q. E. D.

11. Let  $A$  be a point on the bank of a river and let  $B$  be an object immediately opposite to  $A$  on the other bank. Join  $AB$ . Then  $AB$  indicates the breadth of the river.



From  $A$  draw a straight line  $AC$  at right angles to  $AB$ , and let  $O$  be the middle point of  $AC$ .

Join  $BO$

From  $C$  draw  $CD$  perpendicular to  $AC$  meeting  $BO$  produced in  $D$ . Then  $D$  represents the point from which  $C$  and  $B$  are seen in the same direction.

It is required to prove that  $CD$  is equal to the breadth of the river.

**Proof**—In the two  $\triangle^s$   $DOC$  and  $AOB$

Because  $\begin{cases} OC=AO \text{ (given)} \\ \text{the } \angle DOC=\text{the } \angle AOB \text{ (Theor. 3)} \\ \text{and the } \angle DCO=\text{the } \angle BAO \text{ (being rt. } \angle^s) \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 17,

so that,  $CD=AB$

Hence  $CD$  is equal to the breadth of the river.

Q. E. D.

### Page 54.

1. (i) It is required to state the properties of a triangle relating to the sum of its interior angles

The sum of all interior angles of every triangle  $= 2$  rt.  $\angle^s$  (Theor 16)

(ii) It is required to state the properties of a triangle relating to the sum of its exterior angles.

If the sides of triangle be produced successively in the same direction, then the sum of all its exterior angles thus formed is equal to 4 rt. angles (Cor. 2. Theor. 16)

In a polygon of  $n$  sides the property corresponding to (i) is that the sum of all the interior angles together with four right angles  $= 2n$  rt.  $\angle^s$  (Cor. 1 Theor 16)

The triangle shares the property (ii) with every other rectilineal figure.

2 It is required to classify triangles with regard to their angles.

With regard to angles, the triangles are divided into (i) acute-angled triangles, (ii) right angled triangles, and (iii) obtuse-angled triangles.

Assumption made in this classification is that every triangle must have at least two acute-angles.

(Theor. 8. Cor. 2)

3. It is required to enunciate two theorems in which from data relating to the sides a conclusion is drawn relating to the angles.

If two sides of a triangle are equal to one another, then the angles opposite to the equal sides are equal to one another (Theor. 5)

If one side of a triangle is greater than another, then the angle opposite to the greater side is greater than the angle opposite to the less (Theor. 9)

In the  $\triangle ABC$ , because  $a=c=3.6$  cm.

$\therefore$  the  $\angle A =$  the  $\angle C$  (Theor. 5)

and because  $a$  or  $c$  is greater than  $b$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle A$  or the  $\angle C$  is greater than the  $\angle B$ .

(Theor. 9)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle B$  is the least angle

Again, because the  $\angle A =$  the  $\angle C$ , therefore each of them must be an acute angle, and because the  $\angle B$  is less than the  $\angle A$  or the  $\angle C$ , therefore the  $\angle B$  is also an acute angle.

$\therefore ABC$  is an acute angled triangle.

4. It is required to enunciate two theorems in which from data relating to the angles a conclusion is drawn relating to the sides.

If two angles of a triangle are equal to one another, then the sides opposite to the equal angles are equal to one another (Theor. 6)

If one angle of a triangle is greater than another, then the side opposite to the greater angle is greater than the side opposite to the less (Theor. 10)

(i)  $A=48^\circ$  and  $B=51^\circ$ ,  $\therefore A+B=48+51=99^\circ$

$\angle A+B+C=180^\circ$  (Theor. 16. Inf 1)

$\therefore C=180^\circ-(A+B)=180^\circ-99^\circ=81^\circ$

Because  $C$  is the greatest angle, hence  $c$  is the greatest side.

$$\therefore \text{ (ii) } A=B=62\frac{1}{2}^\circ, \therefore A+B=62\frac{1}{2}^\circ+62\frac{1}{2}^\circ=125^\circ$$

$$A+B+C=180^\circ \text{ (Theor 36 Inf. 1)}$$

$$\therefore C=180^\circ-(A+B)=180^\circ-125^\circ=55^\circ$$

$\therefore C$  is the least angle and  $c$  is the least side

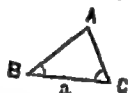
(Theor. 16)

$$A=B, \therefore a=b. \text{ (Theor 6)}$$

Hence the arrangement of the sides in order of their lengths is  $a, b, c$ .

5 In the equality of triangles *ambiguity* arises when two sides of one triangle is equal to two sides of another triangle, and the angles opposite to shorter pair of equal sides are also given equal

(i) Because  $\angle A = \angle A' = 71^\circ$ ,  $\angle B = \angle B' = 46^\circ$  and  $a = a' = 37$  cm.



$\therefore$  we have two angles  $A$  and  $B$  of the triangle  $ABC$  equal to two angles  $A'$  and  $B'$  of the triangle  $A'B'C'$ , each to each, and the side  $a$  of the first equal to the corresponding side  $a'$  of the other, hence the  $\triangle^s ABC$  and  $A'B'C'$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 17)

$$\text{The } \angle^s A+B=71^\circ+46^\circ=117^\circ$$

$$\text{The } \angle^s A+B+C=180^\circ \text{ (Theor 16 Inf 1)}$$

$$\therefore \text{ the } \angle C=180^\circ-(\angle^s A+B)$$

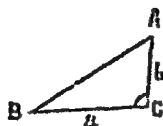
$$=180^\circ-117^\circ=63^\circ$$

**Construction**—Take a straight line  $BC=37$  cm.

At  $B$  and  $C$  make the  $\angle^s CBA$  and  $BCA$  equal to  $46^\circ$  and  $63^\circ$  respectively, the arms  $BA$  and  $CA$  of the angles meeting at  $A$ . Then  $ABC$  is the required triangle.

The  $\triangle A'B'C'$  can similarly be constructed.

(ii). Because  $a = a' = 1.2$  cm.,  $b = b' = 2.4$  cm., and  $\angle C = \angle C' = 81^\circ$



$\therefore$  we have two sides  $a$  and  $b$  of the triangle  $ABC$  equal to two sides  $a'$  and  $b'$  of the triangle  $A'B'C'$ , each to each, and the included angle  $C$  of the first equal to the included angle  $C'$  of the other, hence two  $\triangle^s ABC$  and  $A'B'C'$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

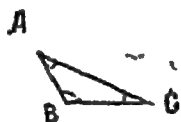
**Construction**—Take a straight line  $BC = 4.2$  cm. At  $C$  make the  $\angle BCA = 81^\circ$  making the arm  $AC = 2.4$  cm.

Join  $AB$

Then  $ABC$  is the required triangle.

Similarly the triangle  $A'B'C'$  can be constructed.

(iii). Because  $A = A' = 36^\circ$ ,  $B = B' = 121^\circ$  and  $C = C' = 23^\circ$ .

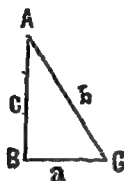


$\therefore$  we have three angles  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$  of the triangle  $ABC$  equal to three angles  $A'$ ,  $B'$ ,  $C'$  of the triangle  $A'B'C'$ , each to each, hence the two triangles  $ABC$  and  $A'B'C'$  are either identically equal or similar.

**Construction**—Take a straight line  $BC$  of any length. At  $B$  and  $C$  make the  $\angle^s CBA$  and  $BCA = 121^\circ$  and  $23^\circ$  respectively, the arms  $BA$ ,  $CA$  meeting at  $A$ . Then  $ABC$  is the required triangle. Similarly the triangle  $A'B'C'$  can be constructed taking  $B'C'$  equal to  $BC$  when the triangles will be identically equal, or making  $B'C'$  greater or less than  $BC$  when the triangles will be similar.



(iv) Because  $a = a' = 3$  cm.,  $b = b' = 5.2$  cm. and  $c = c' = 5$  cm.



We have three sides  $a, b, c$  of the triangle  $ABC$  equal to three sides  $a', b', c'$  of the triangle  $A'B'C'$ , each to each, hence the two triangles are equal in all respects (Theor. 7)

**Construction**—Take a straight line  $BC = 3$  cm. With centres  $B$  and  $C$  and radii equal to  $4.5$  cm and  $5.2$  cm draw two arcs cutting at  $A$ . Join  $AB$  and  $AC$ . Then  $ABC$  is the required triangle,

Similarly the  $\triangle A'B'C'$  can be constructed.

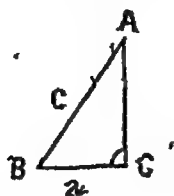
(v) Because  $b = b' = 4.3$  cm.  $c = c' = 5.0$  cm. and  $\angle B = \angle B' = 53^\circ$ .



$\therefore$  We have two sides  $b, c$  of the triangle  $ABC$  equal to two sides  $b', c'$  of the triangle  $A'B'C'$ , and the angle  $B$  opposite to shorter side  $b$  of the first equal to the corresponding angle  $B'$  opposite to shorter side  $b'$  of the other; hence the ambiguity arises.

**Construction**—Take a straight line  $BC$  of any convenient length. At  $B$  make the  $\angle CBA = 53^\circ$  making the arm  $BA = 5$  cm. With centre  $A$  and radius  $= 4.3$  cm. draw an arc cutting  $BC$  in two points  $C$  and  $D$  on the same side of  $B$ . Hence there are two triangles  $ABD$  and  $ABC$  which satisfy the given conditions. Similarly we can get the triangles  $A'B'C'$  and  $A'B'D'$  satisfying the given conditions.

(vi) Because  $\angle C = \angle C' = 90^\circ$ ,  $c = c' = 5$  cm. and  $a = a' = 3$  cm.



$\therefore$  We have two right-angled triangles  $ABC$ ,  $A'B'C'$  right-angled at  $C$  and  $C'$ , and one side  $a$  and the hypotenuse  $c$  of the  $\triangle ABC$  respectively equal to one side  $a'$  and the hypotenuse  $c'$  of the  $\triangle A'B'C'$ , hence two triangles are equal in all respects (Theor. 18)

**Construction**—Take a straight line  $BC = 3$  cm.

At  $C$  draw  $CA$  perpendicular to  $BC$ . With centre  $B$  and radius  $= 5$  cm, draw an arc cutting  $CA$  in  $A$ . Join  $AB$ . Then  $ABC$  is the required triangle

Similarly the  $\triangle A'B'C'$  can be constructed.

6. (2) It is required to state generally under what conditions two triangles are necessarily congruent.

Two triangles are necessarily congruent in any of the following cases —

(1) When two triangles have two sides and the included angle of the one equal to two sides and the included angle of the other.

(2) When two triangles have three sides of the one equal to three sides of the other.

(3) When two triangles have two angles and any one side of the one equal to two angles and the corresponding side of the other.

(4) When two triangles are right-angled, and one side and hypotenuse of the one equal to the corresponding side and hypotenuse of the other.

(2) It is required to state generally under what conditions triangles may or may not be congruent.

Two triangles may or may not be congruent in any of the following cases —

(1) When two triangles have three angles of the one equal to three angles of the other.

(2) When two triangles have two sides and the angle opposite to shorter given side of the one equal to two sides and the angle opposite to the shorter given side of the other.

7. It is required to explain carefully that if two triangles have their angles equal, each to each, the triangles are not necessarily equal in all respects because the three data are not independent.

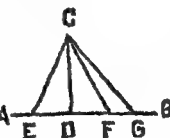
If two triangles have two angles of the one respectively equal to two angles of the other, then the third angle of the one must be equal to the third angle of the other (Theor. 16.

Inf 2)

Thus the third relation is only a consequence of the first two. Hence the three data are not independent. Without some further data we cannot conclude that the triangles are equal in all respects.

### Page 55.

8. Let  $AB$  be a straight line and  $C$  be any external point. From  $C$  draw  $CD$  perpendicular to  $AB$ . Let  $CE$  and  $CF$  be any two obliques making equal angles  $ECD, FCD$  with the perpendicular  $CD$ . Let  $GC$  be any other oblique such that the  $\angle DCE$  is less than the  $\angle DCG$ .



(2) It is required to prove that the perpendicular  $CD$  is the shortest line.

Proof.—In the  $\triangle ECD$ , the  $\angle EDC$  is a rt angle

$\therefore$  the  $\angle CED$  is an acute angle (Theor 8 Cor. 1)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle EDC$  is greater than the  $\angle CED$

$\therefore CE$  is greater than  $CD$  (Theor. 10)

Similarly it can be proved that any other oblique drawn from  $C$  to  $AB$  is greater than  $CD$ .

$\therefore$  the perpendicular  $CD$  is the shortest line

(ii) It is required to prove that the obliques  $CE$  and  $CF$  are equal.

Proof — In the two  $\triangle^s$   $CED$  and  $CDF$

because  $\begin{cases} \text{the } \angle ECD = \text{the } \angle DCF \text{ (given)} \\ \text{the } \angle EDC = \text{the } \angle CDF \text{ being rt. } \angle^s \\ \text{and } CD \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 17)

so that,  $CE = CF$ .

(iii) It is required to prove that  $CE$  is less than  $CG$ .

In the two triangles  $EDC$  and  $COF$ , the  $\angle EDC = \text{the } \angle CDF$ , and the  $\angle ECD = \text{the } \angle FCD$

$\therefore$  the third  $\angle CED = \text{the third } \angle CFD$  (Theor. 16. Inf. 2)

In the  $\triangle CFG$ , the ext.  $\angle CFD$  is greater than the int.  $\angle CGE$  (Theor. 8)

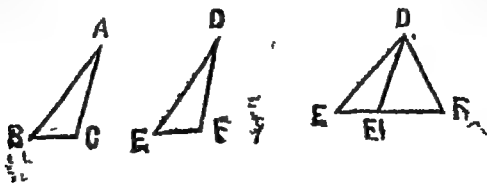
$\therefore$  the  $\angle CEG$  is also greater than the  $\angle CGE$

$\therefore$   $CG$  is greater than  $CE$ .

i. e.,  $CE$  is less than  $CG$ . The oblique  $CE$  makes smaller angle with the perpendicular  $CD$  than the oblique  $CG$  makes with  $CD$ .

Q. E. D.

9. Let  $ABC$  and  $DEF$  two triangles in which  $AB = DE$ ,  $AC = DF$  and  $\angle ABC = \text{the } \angle DEF$ .



(i) It is required to prove that the  $\angle ACB = \text{the } \angle DFE$  and in this case the  $\triangle^s ABC$  and  $DEF$  are equal in all respects

If the  $\angle BAC$  be equal to the  $\angle EDF$ .

Proof—Then in the two  $\triangle^s ABC$  and  $DEF$

because  $\begin{cases} BA = DE \\ AC = DF \\ \text{and the } \angle BAC = \text{the } \angle EDF \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

so that, the  $\angle ACB = \text{the } \angle DFE$ .

It is required to prove that the  $\angle ACB$  is the supplement of the  $\angle DFE$ .

If the  $\angle BAC$  be not equal to the  $\angle EDF$ , let the  $\angle EDF'$  be equal to the  $\angle BAC$ .

Proof—In the two  $\triangle^s ABC$  and  $EDF'$

Because  $\begin{cases} AB = ED \\ \text{the } \angle ABC = \text{the } \angle DEF' \\ \text{and the } \angle BAC = \text{the } \angle EDF' \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 17)

So that  $AB = DF'$  and the  $\angle ACB = \text{the } \angle DF'E$

But  $AC = DF$  (given);  $\therefore DF = DF'$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle DFF' = \text{the } \angle DF'E$  (Theor. 5)

Now, the  $\angle DFF'$  is supplement of the  $\angle DF'E$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle DFF'$  is supplement of the  $\angle DF'E$ .

Or, the  $\angle DFE$  is supplement of the  $\angle DF'E$

But the  $\angle DF'E = \text{the } \angle ACB$

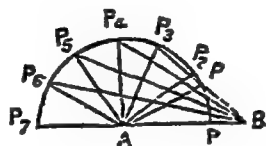
$\therefore$  the  $\angle DFE$  is supplement of the  $\angle ACB$ ,

10. Let  $XY$  be a straight line of any length. From  $Q$  any point in  $XY$  draw  $PQ \perp XY$ . Through  $P$  draw obliques  $PA, PB, PC, PD, PE$  making the angles  $\angle QPA, \angle QPB, \angle QPC, \angle QPD, \angle QPE$  equal to  $15^\circ, 30^\circ, 45^\circ, 60^\circ, 75^\circ$  respectively with  $PQ$ .



Measure  $PA, PB, PC, PD, PE$  and it will be found that they are equal to 4.1 cm., 4.6 cm., 5.7 cm., 8 cm. and 15.6 cm respectively.

11. Let  $PAB$  be any triangle in which  $AP = 3$  cm. and  $AB = 4$  cm. With centre  $A$  and radius  $AP$  draw a semi-circle  $P_1P_4P_7$ . As the angle  $A$  increases from  $0^\circ$  to  $180^\circ$ , the point  $P$  moves on the semi-circle from  $P_1$  to  $P_7$ .



Let  $AP_2, AP_3, AP_4, AP_5$ , and  $AP_6$  denote the successive positions of  $AP$  according as  $\angle PAB$  makes the  $\angle P_2AB = 30^\circ, \angle P_3AB = 60^\circ, \angle P_4AB = 90^\circ, \angle P_5AB = 120^\circ, \angle P_6AB = 150^\circ$ .

$AP_1$  denotes the position of  $AP$  when it makes an angle equal to  $0^\circ$  with  $AB$ , and  $AP_7$  denotes the position of  $AP$  when it makes an angle equal to  $180^\circ$  with  $AB$ .

Join  $BP_2, BP_3, BP_4, BP_5$ , and  $BP_6$ .

Measure  $P_1B, P_2B, P_3B, P_4B, P_5B, P_6B$  and  $P_7B$  and it will be found that  $P_1B = 1$  cm.,  $P_2B = 2$  cm.,  $P_3B = 3.6$  cm.,  $P_4B = 4$  cm.,  $P_5B = 6.1$  cm.,  $P_6B = 6.8$  cm., and  $P_7B = 7$  cm.



Measure  $AL$  and  $BL$  and it will be found that  $AL = 1.73''$  and  $BL = 3.465''$ .

$\therefore$  The distance of the lighthouse from  $A = 346$  yds, and its distance from  $B = 693$  yds

Page 59.

1. Let  $ABCD$  be a quadrilateral whose opposite sides are equal, i.e.,  $AB = CD$  and  $AD = BC$ .



It is required to prove that the figure  $ABCD$  is a parallelogram

Join  $BD$ .

Proof—In the two  $\triangle^s ABD$  and  $BCD$

Because  $\begin{cases} AB = CD \text{ (given)} \\ AD = BC \text{ (given)} \\ \text{and } BD \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 7)

so that, the  $\angle ADB =$  the  $\angle DBC$  and the  $\angle ABD =$  the  $\angle BDC$ .

But these are alternate angles.

$\therefore AD$  is parallel to  $BC$  and  $AB$  is parallel to  $DC$ . (Theor. 13)

$\therefore$  the figure  $ABCD$  is a parallelogram.

Q. E. D.

2 Let  $ABCD$  be a quadrilateral whose opposite angles are equal, i.e. the  $\angle ABC =$  the  $\angle BAD =$  the  $\angle BCD$  and  $\angle ADC$ .



It is required to prove that the figure  $ABCD$  is a parallelogram.



**Proof**—The sum of the  $\angle^s$  ABC, BCD, ADC and BAD of the quadrilateral ABCD is 4 rt  $\angle^s$  (Theor. 16. Inf 5)

But the  $\angle$  BAD = the  $\angle$  BCD, and the  $\angle$  ABC = the  $\angle$  ADC (given)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle$  BAD + the  $\angle$  ABC = 2 rt  $\angle^s$

$\therefore$  AD and BC are parallel (Theor. 13)

Again, because the  $\angle$  ABC = the  $\angle$  ADC (given) and the  $\angle$  BAD + the  $\angle$  ABC = 2 rt.  $\angle^s$  (proved)

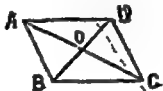
$\therefore$  the  $\angle$  BAD + the  $\angle$  ADC = 2 rt  $\angle^s$

$\therefore$  AB and CD are parallel (Theor. 13)

$\therefore$  the figure ABCD is a parallelogram.

Q E D.

3 Let the diagonals AC, BD of the quadrilateral ABCD bisect each other at O, *ve*,  $AO = OC$ , and  $OB = DO$ .



It is required to prove that the figure ABCD is a parallelogram.

**Proof**—In the two  $\triangle^s$  AOD and BOC

Because  $\begin{cases} AO = CO \text{ (given)} \\ DO = OB \text{ (given)} \\ \text{and the } \angle AOD = \text{the } \angle BOC \end{cases}$  (Theor. 3)

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

so that, the  $\angle$  ADO = the  $\angle$  CBO and the  $\angle$  DAO = the  $\angle$  BCO

But these are alternate angles

$\therefore$  AD is parallel to BC, and AB parallel to CD  
(Theor. 13)

∴ the figure ABCD is a parallelogram.

Q. E. D.

4. (See Fig. in Ex. 10 on p. 26).

Let ABCD be a rhombus whose diagonals AC, BD cut one another at O.

It is required to prove that the diagonals AC, BD bisect one another at right angles.

Proof.—In the two  $\triangle^s$  ADB and DCB

Because  $\begin{cases} AD=BC \text{ (given)} \\ AB=DC \text{ (given)} \\ \text{and BD is common to both} \end{cases}$

∴ two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 7)

so that, the  $\angle ADB = \text{the } \angle CBD$ .

In the two  $\triangle^s$  ADO and CBO

Because  $\begin{cases} \text{the } \angle ADO = \text{the } \angle CBO \text{ (proved)} \\ \text{the } \angle AOD = \text{the } \angle BOC \text{ (Theor. 3)} \\ \text{and AD=BC (given)} \end{cases}$

∴ two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 17)

so that,  $AO=OC$  and  $DO=OB$

i. e. the diagonals AC and BD of the rhombus ABCD bisect one another at O

Now, in the two  $\triangle^s$  ADO and CDO

Because  $\begin{cases} AD=DC \text{ (given)} \\ DO \text{ is common to both} \\ \text{and } AO=OC \text{ (proved)} \end{cases}$

∴ two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 7)

so that the  $\angle AOD = \text{the } \angle DOC$ , but these are adjacent angles, therefore each is a right angle (From definition)

the  $\angle AOD = \text{the } \angle BOC$  (Theor. 3)  
 $= 1 \text{ rt. } \angle$

also the  $\angle DOC = \text{the } \angle AOB$  (Theor. 3)  
 $= 1 \text{ rt. } \angle$ .

$\therefore$  the diagonals AC, BD of the rhombus ABCD cut one another at right angles at O

Hence the diagonals AD, BD of the rhombus ABCD bisect one another at right angles at O.

Q. E. D.

5. Let ABCD be a parallelogram whose diagonals AC, BD are equal.



It is required to prove that all its angles are right angles.

Proof.—In the two  $\triangle^s$  ABC and ADB

Because  $\begin{cases} BC = AD & (\text{Theor. 21}) \\ AC = BD & (\text{given}) \\ \text{and } AB \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 7)

so that, the  $\angle ABC = \text{the } \angle DAB$ .

Because AD and BC are parallel and AB meets them

$\therefore \angle ABC + \angle DAB = 2 \text{ rt. } \angle^s$  (Theor. 14).

But  $\angle ABC = \text{the } \angle DAB$  (proved)

$\therefore 2 \angle ABC = 2 \text{ rt. } \angle^s$

or,  $\angle ABC = 1 \text{ rt. } \angle$

also,  $2 \angle DAB = 2 \text{ rt. } \angle$

or,  $\angle DAB = 1 \text{ rt. } \angle$

But the  $\angle ABC = \text{the } \angle ADC$  (Theor. 21).  
 $= 1 \text{ rt. } \angle$

and the  $\angle DAB = \text{the } \angle DCB$  (Theor. 21)  
 $= 1 \text{ rt. } \angle$

$\therefore$  all the angles of the parallelogram ABCD are right angles.

Q. E. D.

6: (See Fig in Ex. 3).

Let ABCD be a parallelogram which is not rectangular and let AC, BD be its diagonals

It is required to prove that DB and AC are not equal.

Proof.—Because the  $\angle^s$  DAB and ABC  $= 2 \text{ rt. } \angle^s$   
 ('Theor. 14).

and neither of the  $\angle^s$  DAB and ABC is a rt.  $\angle$

$\therefore$  one of them is acute and the other obtuse.

Let DAB be an acute angle, then ABC is an obtuse angle

Now, in the two  $\triangle^s$  ADB and ABC

Because  $\begin{cases} AD = BC & (\text{Theor. 21}) \\ BA \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

but the  $\angle$  DAB is less than the  $\angle$  ABC,

$\therefore$  DB is less than AC. (Theor. 19)

$\therefore$  AC and DB are not equal

Q. E. D.

Page 60.

1. (See Fig. in Ex. 10 on p 26).

Let ABCD be a rhombus and let AC, BD be its diagonals.

It is required to prove that the rhombus  $ABCD$  is symmetrical about  $AC$  and  $BD$ .

Proof.—In the two triangles  $ABD$  and  $BCD$

Because  $\begin{cases} AB = BC \text{ (given)} \\ AD = DC \text{ (given)} \\ \text{and } DB \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 7)

so that, the  $\angle ABD =$  the  $\angle CBD$  and the  $\angle ADB =$  the  $\angle CDB$ .

$\therefore$   $BD$  bisects the  $\angle^s ABC$  and  $ADC$

$\therefore$  If the  $\triangle ABD$  be turned about  $BD$  falling upon the  $\triangle BCD$  then  $AD$  will fall upon  $DC$  and  $AB$  upon  $BC$

But  $AD = DC$  and  $AB = BC$

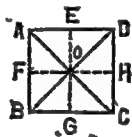
$\therefore$  the  $\triangle ABD$  will coincide with the  $\triangle BCD$

$\therefore ABCD$  is symmetrical about  $BD$ .

Similarly it can be proved that the figure  $ABCD$  is symmetrical about  $AC$ .

Q E D

2. Let  $ABCD$  be a square whose diagonals  $AC$ ,  $BD$  cut one another at  $O$ .



It is required to prove that the diagonals  $AC$ ,  $BD$  of the square  $ABCD$  are axes of symmetry.

Proof.—In the two  $\triangle^s ABD$  and  $BCD$

Because  $\begin{cases} AB = BC \text{ (given)} \\ AD = DC \text{ (given)} \\ \text{and } BD \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 7)

so that, the  $\angle ABD =$  the  $\angle CBD$  and the  $\angle ADB =$  the  $\angle CDB$

i. e., BD bisects the  $\angle^s$  ABC and ADC.

$\therefore$  If the  $\triangle ABD$  be turned about BD falling upon the  $\triangle BCD$ , then AB will fall upon BC, and AD upon DC

But  $AB = BC$  and  $AD = DC$

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle ABD$  will coincide with the  $\triangle BCD$

$\therefore$  the figure ABCD is symmetrical about BD.

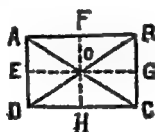
Similarly it can be proved that ABCD is symmetrical about AC

i. e., AC and BD are axes of symmetry of the square ABCD

Q. E. D.

A square is also symmetrical about its diameters, that is, the lines joining the middle points of its opposite sides, as shown by the dotted lines EG and FH in the figure.

3. Let ABCD be a rectangle whose diagonals AC, BD cut one another at O.



It is required to prove that the diagonals AC, BD divide the figure ABCD into two congruent triangles.

Proof—In the  $\triangle^s$  ADB and DCB

Because  $\begin{cases} AD = BC & (\text{Theor. 21}) \\ AB = DC & (\text{Theor. 21}) \\ \text{and } BD \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor 7)

so that, the  $\angle ABD =$  the  $\angle BDC$  and the  $\angle ADB =$  the  $\angle DBC$ .

Since two  $\triangle^s$  ADB and DCB are congruent

$\therefore$  the diagonal DB divides the figure ABCD into two congruent triangles.

Similarly it can be proved that the diagonal  $AC$  divides  $ABCD$  into two congruent triangles.

Q. E. D.

In the  $\triangle ABD$ , let  $AB$  be greater than  $AD$   
then  $\angle ADB$  is greater than  $\angle ABD$  (Theor. 9)

But the  $\angle ABD =$  the  $\angle BDC$  (proved)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ADB$  is greater than the  $\angle BDC$

Similarly the  $\angle DBC$  is greater than  $\angle ABD$

$\therefore$ , the diagonal  $BD$  does not bisect the  $\angle^s ABC$  and  $ADC$

Similarly it can be proved that the diagonal  $AC$  does not bisect the  $\angle^s DAB$  and  $DCA$

$\therefore$  the diagonals  $AC$  and  $DB$  of the figure  $ABCD$  are not axes of symmetry, because the two parts will not coincide when the figure is folded about its diagonal.

A rectangle is symmetrical about its diagonals, i.e., the lines joining the middle points of its opposite sides, as shown by dotted lines  $EG$  and  $FH$  in the figure.

4. An oblique parallelogram has no axis of symmetry, because the diagonals do not bisect the angles through which they pass and diagonals do not make equal angles with the sides whose middle points are joined by them

5. (See Fig. in Ex. 10 on p. 49).

Let  $ABCD$  be a quadrilateral in which  $AB=AD$  and  $CB=CD$ , but the sides are not all equal.

It is required to find which of diagonals is an axis of symmetry.

Join  $AC$  and  $BD$ .

Proof — In the two  $\triangle^s ABC$  and  $ADC$

Because  $\begin{cases} AB=AD \text{ (given)} \\ CB=CD \text{ (given)} \\ \text{and } AC \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 7)

so that, the  $\angle BAC =$  the  $\angle DAC$  and the  $\angle ACB =$  the  $\angle ACD$  i.e.,  $AC$  bisects the  $\angle^s BAD$  and  $BCD$ .

$\therefore$  If the  $\triangle ABC$  be turned about  $AC$  falling upon the  $\triangle ADC$ , then  $AB$  will upon  $AD$  and  $CB$  upon  $CD$ .

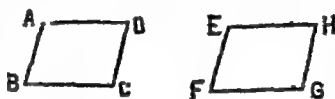
But  $AB = AD$  and  $CB = CD$  (given)

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle ABC$  will coincide with the  $\triangle ADC$ .

The diagonal  $BD$  does not bisect the  $\angle^s ABC$  and  $ADC$ .

Hence, the figure  $ABCD$  is not symmetrical about  $DB$ .

6. (1) Let  $ABCD$  and  $EFGH$  be two parallelograms having two adjacent sides  $AB, BC$  respectively equal to two adjacent sides  $EF, FG$  of the other, each to each, and the angle  $BAD$  of the former equal to the angle  $FEH$  of the latter



It is required to prove that the parallelograms  $ABCD$  and  $EFGH$  are identically equal.

Proof.—Because the  $\angle^s BAD$  and  $ABC = 2$  rt  $\angle^s$  also the  $\angle^s FEH$  and  $EFG = 2$  rt  $\angle^s$  (Th. or 14)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s BAD$  and  $ABC =$  the  $\angle^s FEH$  and  $EFG$

But the  $\angle BAD =$  the  $\angle FEH$  (given)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC =$  the  $\angle EFG$

Similarly it can be proved that the  $\angle BCD =$  the  $\angle FGH$

Again because  $AB = CD$  and  $EF = GH$  (Theor 21)

and  $AB = EF$  (given)

$\therefore CD = GH$

Similarly it can be proved that  $AD = EH$ .

Apply the parallelogram  $ABCD$  to the parallelogram  $EFGH$ .

so that, the point  $B$  falls on  $F$  and the sides  $BC$  along  $FG$ ,



But  $BC = FG$  (given)

$\therefore$  the point  $C$  will fall on  $G$

And because the  $\angle ABC =$  the  $\angle EFG$  (proved)

$\therefore$  the side  $BA$  will fall along  $FE$

But  $AB = EF$  (given)

$\therefore$  the point  $A$  will fall on  $E$

Again because the  $\angle BCD =$  the  $\angle FGH$  (proved)

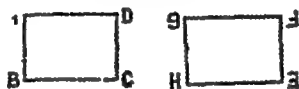
$\therefore$  the side  $CD$  will fall along  $GH$

But  $CD = GH$  (proved)

$\therefore$  the point  $D$  falls on the point  $H$ , and hence the side  $AD$  falls on the side  $EH$

$\therefore$  the parallelogram  $ABCD$  will coincide with the parallelogram  $EFGH$  and will therefore be identically equal to it.

(2) Let  $ABCD$  and  $EFGH$  be two rectangles having two adjacent sides respectively equal sides  $EF$ ,  $FG$  of to each



$AB$ ,  $BC$  of the one to two adjacent the other, each

It is required to prove that the rectangles  $ABCD$  and  $EFGH$  are identically equal.

Proof — All the angles of rectangles are right angles

(Theor. 21. Cor. 1)

Because  $AB = CD$  and  $EF = GH$  (Theor. 21)

and  $AB = EF$  (given)

$\therefore CD = GH$

Similarly it can be proved that  $AD = EH$

Apply the rectangle  $ABCD$  to the rectangle  $EFGH$  so that the point  $B$  falls on  $F$  and  $BA$  along  $FE$ , then because the  $\angle ABC =$  the  $\angle EFG$  (being rt.  $\angle^s$ ), therefore  $BC$  will fall along  $FG$ .

Now because  $AB=EF$  and  $BC=FG$  (given)

$\therefore$  the point  $A$  will fall on  $E$  and  $C$  on  $G$ .

Again because the  $\angle BAD = \text{the } \angle FEH$  (being rt.  $\angle^s$ )  
and the  $\angle BCD = \text{the } \angle FGH$  (being rt.  $\angle^s$ )

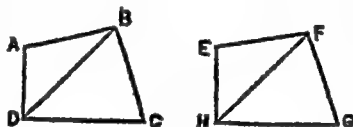
$\therefore$  the side  $AD$  will fall along  $EH$  and  $CD$  along  $GH$

$\therefore$  the point  $D$  will fall on the point  $H$ .

$\therefore$  the rectangle  $ABCD$  coincides with the rectangle  $EFGH$ , and is therefore identically equal to it.

Q. E. D.

7. Let  $ABCD$  and  $EFGH$  be two quadrilaterals in which  $AB=EF$ ,  $BC=FG$ ,  $CD=GH$  and  $DA=HE$ , also the  $\angle BAD = \text{the } \angle FEH$ .



It is required to prove that the figures  $ABCD$  and  $EFGH$  may be made to coincide with one another.

Proof—Apply the figure  $ABCD$  to the figure  $EFGH$ , so that  $A$  falls on  $E$  and  $AD$  along  $EH$ , then because the  $\angle BAD = \text{the } \angle FEH$ , therefore  $AB$  will fall along  $EF$ .

Now because  $AB=EF$  and  $AD=EH$  (given)

$\therefore$  the point  $B$  will fall on  $F$  and the point  $D$  on  $H$ .

$\therefore$  the straight line  $BD$  must coincide with the straight line  $HF$ , for otherwise two straight lines would enclose a space.

Now  $BD$  coinciding with  $HF$ , and the sides  $DC$ ,  $BC$  being respectively equal to the sides,  $HG$ ,  $FG$ , each to each,

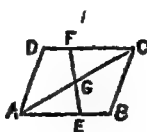
$\therefore$  the  $\triangle DBC$  will coincide with the  $\triangle HFG$

(Theor. 7).

$\therefore$  the whole figure  $ABCD$  will coincide with the whole figure  $EFGH$ .

Q. E. D.

8. Let  $ABCD$  be a parallelogram and let  $AC$  be a diagonal. Let  $EF$  be a straight line passing through  $G$ , the mid-point of  $AC$  and of opposite sides  $AB$ ,  $DC$  at  $E$  and  $F$ .



It is required to prove that  $EF$  is bisected at  $G$ .

Proof—In the two  $\triangle^s AEG$  and  $FGC$

Because  $\begin{cases} AG=GC \text{ (given)} \\ \text{the } \angle EAG = \text{the alternate } \angle GCF \\ \text{and the } \angle AGE = \text{the } \angle FGC \text{ (Theor. 3)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 17)

so that,  $EG=GF$

$\therefore$   $EF$  is bisected at  $G$

Q. E. D

9. Let  $ABCD$  be a parallelogram and let  $BD$  be any diagonal. Let  $AF$  and  $CE$  be perpendiculars drawn from  $A$  and  $C$  to  $BD$ .



It is required to prove that  $AF=CE$

Proof.—In the two  $\triangle^s AFD$  and  $BEC$

Because  $\begin{cases} \text{the } \angle AFD = \text{the } \angle CEB \text{ (being rt } \angle^s) \\ \text{the } \angle ADF = \text{the alternate } \angle EBC \\ \text{and } AD=BC \text{ (Theor. 21)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 17)

so that,  $AF=CE$

Q. E. D

10. Let  $ABCD$  be a parallelogram and let  $X, Y$  respectively be the middle points of the sides  $AD, BC$ . Join  $CX$  and  $AY$ .



It is required to prove that the figure  $AYCX$  is a parallelogram.

Proof.— $AD$  is equal and parallel to  $BC$  (Theor. 21)

But  $AX = \frac{1}{2} AD$  and  $CY = \frac{1}{2} BC$  (given)

$\therefore AX$  is equal and parallel to  $CY$

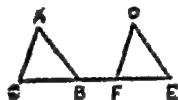
The extremities of two equal and parallel straight lines  $AX$  and  $CY$  are joined towards the same parts by the straight lines  $AY$  and  $CX$

$\therefore AY$  is equal and parallel to  $CX$  (Theor. 20)

$\therefore$  the figure  $AYCX$  is a parallelogram

Q. E. D.

11 Let  $ABC$  and  $DEF$  be two triangles such that  $\angle B, BC$  are respectively equal and parallel to  $\angle E, EF$ .



It is required to prove that  $AC$  is equal and parallel to  $DF$ .

Place the triangles such that their bases are in the same straight line.

Then in the two  $\triangle^s ABC$  and  $DEF$

Because  $\begin{cases} AB = DE \text{ (given)} \\ BC = EF \text{ (given)} \end{cases}$

(and the ext  $\angle ABC =$  the int.  $\angle DEF$  (Theor. 14))

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

so that,  $AC = DF$ , and the int  $\angle ACB =$  the ext.  $\angle DFE$

$\therefore AC$  is parallel to  $DF$  (Theor. 13), and also equal to it.

Q. E. D.

12. Let  $ABCD$  be a quadrilateral in which  $AD$  is equal but not parallel to  $BC$ , and  $AB$  is parallel to  $DC$ ,



(2) It is required to prove that the  $\angle BAD + \text{the } \angle BCD = 180^\circ = \text{the } \angle ABC + \text{the } \angle ADC$

From D and C draw DH and CK perpendiculars to AB meeting AB in H and K.

Proof—In the figure DHKC, the two int.  $\angle^s$  DHK and HKC = 2 rt  $\angle^s$

$\therefore$  DH is parallel to KC (Theor. 13)

But HK is parallel to DC (given) and the  $\angle^s$  DHK and HKC are rt  $\angle^s$  (by construction)

$\therefore$  the figure DHKC is a rectangle.

$\therefore$  DH = KC (Theor 21)

In the two  $\triangle^s$  ADH and BKC

because  $\begin{cases} AD = BC \text{ (given)} \\ DH = KC \text{ (proved)} \\ \text{and the } \angle AHD = \text{the } \angle BKC \text{ (being rt. } \angle^s) \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 18)

so that, the  $\angle DAH = \text{the } \angle KBC$  and  $AH = BK$

Since AB and DC are parallel and AD meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s BAD + ADC = 2 \text{ rt } \angle^s = 180^\circ$  (Theor 14)

But the  $\angle BAD = \text{the } \angle ABC$  (proved)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s ABC + ADC = 180^\circ$

Again, because AB and DC are parallel and BC meets them

$\therefore \angle^s ABC + BCD = 2 \text{ rt. } \angle^s = 180^\circ$  (Theor 14)

But  $\angle ABC = \angle BAD$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s BAD + BCD = 180^\circ$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle BAD + \text{the } \angle BCD = 180^\circ = \text{the } \angle ABC + \text{the } \angle ADC$

(ii) Join AC and BD.

It is required to prove that the diagonal AC = the diagonal BD.

Proof—In the two  $\triangle^s$  ADB and ABC

because  $\begin{cases} AD = BC \text{ (given)} \\ AB \text{ is common to both} \\ \text{and the } \angle DAB = \text{the } \angle ABC \text{ (proved in (i))} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

so that,  $BD = AC$

(iii) Let E and F be the middle points of AB and DC respectively. Join EF.

It is required to prove that the figure ABCD is symmetrical about EF.

The figure HKCD is a rectangle (proved in (i))

and C, F are the middle points of HK, CD ( $\because AH = BK$  and  $AE = BE$ )

$\therefore EF$  is perpendicular to HK and DC.

$\therefore$  If the figure ABCD be turned about EF, so that the figure ADFE falls upon the figure BCFE, then because the  $\angle AEF = \text{the } \angle BEF$  and the  $\angle EFD = \text{the } \angle EFC$  (being proved to be rt.  $\angle^s$ ), therefore AE will fall along EB and DF along FC

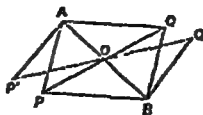
But  $AE = EB$  and  $DF = FC$  (given)

$\therefore$  the point A will fall on B and D on C.

$\therefore$  AD will fall along BC, and coincide with it.

$\therefore$  the figure ABCD is symmetrical about EF.

13. Let  $AP$  and  $BQ$  indicate the positions of the equal straight rods at the parallel but pointing  $AP'$  and  $BQ'$  their any interval of time.



time of starting, being in opposite senses, and positions at the end of

Join  $AQ, PB, AB$  and  $PQ$ , and let  $PQ, AB$  cut at  $O$

(2) It is required to prove that  $AP'$  is parallel to  $BQ'$   
Since the lines  $AP$  and  $BQ$  are initially parallel,

$\therefore \angle PAB = \text{the alternate } \angle QBA$  (Theor. 14)

Then since the rods  $AP$  and  $BQ$  are turning at equal rates in clockwise direction about  $A$  and  $B$ , the angles through which they have turned, *viz*  $\angle^s PAP'$  and  $QBQ'$  are equal.

By adding we have

the  $\angle^s PAP' + PAB = \text{the } \angle QBQ' + ABQ$

or, the  $\angle P'AB = \text{the } \angle Q'BA$ , but these are alternate angles

$\therefore AP'$  and  $BQ'$  are parallel (Theor. 13)

Thus the lines will always be parallel.

(2)' It is required to prove that the line joining  $P$  and  $Q$  will always pass through a certain fixed point.

Proof—Because  $AP$  is equal and parallel to  $BQ$

$\therefore$  the straight lines  $AQ$  and  $BP$  are equal and parallel (Theor 20)

$\therefore$  the figure  $AQBP$  is a parallelogram.

$\therefore$  its diagonals  $AB$  and  $PQ$  bisect each other at  $O$ . (Theor 21 Cor 3)

Again, because  $A, B$  are fixed points, therefore  $O$ , the middle point of  $AB$ , is also a fixed point.

∴ PQ passes through a fixed point O.

Q. E. D.

14. It is required to calculate the angles of a  $\triangle ABC$  if the int.  $\angle A = \frac{2}{7}$  of ext.  $\angle A$ ,  $3B = 4C$ .

Because the int.  $\angle A + \text{ext. } \angle A = 180^\circ$ , and the int  $\angle A = \frac{2}{7}$  of ext.  $\angle A$

$$\therefore \frac{2}{7} \text{ of ext. } \angle A + \text{ext. } \angle A = 180^\circ$$

$$\text{or, } \frac{10}{7} \text{ of ext } \angle A = 180^\circ$$

$$\therefore \text{ext. } \angle A = 180^\circ \times \frac{7}{10} = 126^\circ$$

$$\therefore \text{int. } \angle A = 180^\circ - 126^\circ = 54^\circ$$

In the  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $\angle A + \angle B + \angle C = 180^\circ$  (Theor 16 Inf. 1)

and the  $\angle A = 54^\circ$

$$\therefore \angle B + \angle C = 180^\circ - 54^\circ = 126^\circ$$

$$\therefore \frac{4}{3} \angle C + \angle C = 126^\circ$$

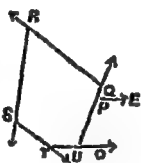
$$\text{or, } \frac{7}{3} \angle C = 126^\circ$$

$$\therefore \angle C = 126^\circ \times \frac{3}{7} = 54^\circ$$

$$\angle B + \angle C = 126^\circ \text{ and } \angle C = 54^\circ$$

$$\therefore \angle B = 126^\circ - 54^\circ = 72^\circ.$$

15. Let P, Q, R, S, represent the points at which the yacht changes her course successively by  $63^\circ$ , by  $78^\circ$ , by  $119^\circ$  and by  $64^\circ$ , starting from the point P and sailing the direction to which she had been set so that she is again moving in an easterly direction. QP is produced to meet TO at U,



It is required to find what change have been made to set the yacht once more on an easterly course.

Because TO is parallel to PE

$$\therefore \text{the } \angle PUO = \text{the } \angle QPE = 63^\circ.$$

Now QRSTU forms a pentagon



$\therefore$  the sum of all its ext angles  $= 4 \text{ rt. } \angle^s = 360^\circ$   
(Theor. 16 Cor 2)

The sum of the ext. angles at U, Q, R, S  $= 63^\circ + 75^\circ + 119^\circ + 64^\circ$

$\therefore$  the ext angle at T  $= 360^\circ - 324^\circ = 36^\circ$

Thus the yacht must change her course by  $36^\circ$ .

16 The sum of all the ext angles of a rectilineal figure  $= 4 \text{ rt. } \angle^s$  (Theor. 16 Cor 2)

$\therefore$  the sum of the int. angles of the figure  $= 4 \text{ rt. } \angle^s$   
(given)

$\therefore$  the sum of the ext and int. angles of the figure  $= 4 \text{ rt. } \angle^s + 4 \text{ rt. } \angle^s$ , or,  $8 \text{ rt. } \angle^s$

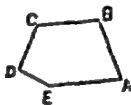
But the ext and int angles at any vertex  $= 2 \text{ rt. } \angle^s$

$\therefore$  the number of vertices and hence of sides  $= \frac{8 \text{ rt. } \angle^s}{2 \text{ rt. } \angle^s}$   
 $= 4$

$\therefore$  the figure contains 4 sides.

$\therefore$  the given figure is a quadrilateral

17. It is required to construct a pentagon or five-sided figure ABCDE having given that the  $\angle B = 110^\circ$  the  $\angle C =$  the  $\angle E = 152^\circ$ .



the  $110^\circ$ ,  $\angle D = 93^\circ$  and

Take a straight line EA, of any convenient length. At E make the  $\angle AED = 152^\circ$  At D make the  $\angle EDC = 93^\circ$ .

At C make the  $\angle DCB = 115^\circ$ . At B make the  $\angle CBA = 110^\circ$  the arm BA meeting EA in A.

Then ABCDE is the required five-sided figure

It is required to prove that AE is parallel to BC

The sum of the int. angles of the pentagon  $ABCDE$

$$= 2.5 \text{ rt } \angle^s - 4 \text{ rt } \angle^s \text{ (Theor. 16. Cor. 1)}$$

$$= 10 \text{ rt } \angle^s - 4 \text{ rt } \angle^s = 6 \text{ rt } \angle^s = 540^\circ$$

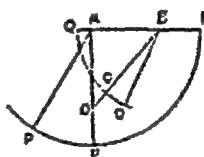
$$\text{the sum of the } \angle^s \text{ B, C, D and E} = 110^\circ + 115^\circ + 93^\circ + 152^\circ = 470^\circ$$

$$\therefore \angle A = 540^\circ - 470^\circ = 70^\circ$$

$$\therefore \angle EAB + \angle ABC = 70^\circ + 110^\circ = 180^\circ = 2 \text{ rt } \angle^s$$

$\therefore AE$  is parallel to  $BC$  (Theor. 13)

18. Let  $AP, AQ$  indicate the positions of the rods at the time of starting ; direction  $AB$  and the uniform rate of and  $BQ$  starting the direction  $BA$  clockwise at the rate of  $3\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  a second about  $B$ .



$AP$  starting from the turning clockwise at  $7\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  a second about  $A$ , simultaneously from and turning counter

(i. It is required to find the time that will elapse before  $AP$  and  $BQ$  are parallel.

Let  $AP', BQ'$  denote their positions when they are parallel. Then the sum of the  $\angle^s P'AP$  and  $QBQ'$  together equal to 2 rt angles, or  $180^\circ$  (Theor. 14)

and because the sum of the angles through which they turn in one second is  $7\frac{1}{2}^\circ + 3\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ , or,  $11\frac{1}{2}^\circ$

$\therefore$  They will be parallel after  $\frac{180^\circ}{11\frac{1}{2}^\circ}$ , or, 16 seconds after the start.

(ii) It is required to calculate the angle between  $AP$  and  $BQ$  twelve seconds from the start.

Let  $AP'', BQ''$  denote their positions 12 seconds after the start.

Then the  $\angle PAP'' = 12 \times 7\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  or  $90^\circ$  and the  $\angle QBQ' = 12 \times 3\frac{3}{4}^\circ$ , or,  $45^\circ$

$\therefore$  the angle between AP and BQ, twelve seconds from the start  $= 90^\circ - 45^\circ$ , or  $45^\circ$ .

(iii) It is required to find the rate at which the angle between AP and BQ decreases

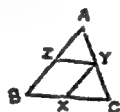
Because AP, BQ turn through  $7\frac{1}{2}^\circ + 3\frac{3}{4}^\circ$ , or  $11\frac{1}{4}^\circ$  in a second.

And because the angle between AP and BQ diminishes each second by the amount by which the sum of the  $\angle^s$  BAPQBA is increased, for the sum of the three angles is constant

Hence, the rate of decrease is  $11\frac{1}{4}^\circ$  in a second.

Page C4

1. Let ABC be a triangle and let Z be the middle point of AB from which ZY is drawn parallel to BC meeting AC in Y



It is required to prove that ZY bisects the side AC i.e.,  $AY = YC$ .

From Y draw YX parallel to AB meeting BC in X

Proof—Because ZY is parallel to BX and YX parallel to ZB, therefore the figure ZYXB is a parallelogram.

$\therefore$  the side  $ZB = YX$  (Theor. 21)

But  $ZB = AZ$  (given),  $\therefore AZ = YX$

Because AB and XY are parallel and AC meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle BAC$  or the  $\angle ZAY =$  the  $\angle XYZ$  (Theor. 14)

Again, because  $ZY$  and  $BC$  are parallel and  $AC$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle AYZ =$  the  $\angle ACB$  or the  $\angle YCX$  (Theor. 14)

Now, in the two  $\triangle^s AZY$  and  $YXC$

because  $\begin{cases} AZ = YX \text{ (proved)} \\ \text{the } \angle AYZ = \text{the } \angle YCX \text{ (proved)} \\ \text{and the } \angle ZAY = \text{the } \angle XYC \text{ (proved)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 17)

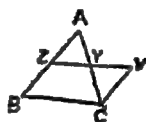
so that,  $AY = YC$

*i. e.*,  $AC$  is bisected at  $Y$ .

Q. E. D.

2. Let  $ABC$  be a triangle, and let  $Z$  and  $Y$  be the middle points of  $AB$  and  $AC$ .

Join  $ZY$ .



It is required to prove that  $ZY$  is parallel to  $BC$ .

Produce  $ZY$  to any point  $V$  making  $YZ = YV$ . Join  $VC$ .

Proof—In the two  $\triangle^s AZY$  and  $YVC$ .

because  $\begin{cases} AY = YC \text{ (given)} \\ ZY = YV \text{ (by construction)} \\ \text{and the } \angle AYZ = \text{the } \angle VYC \text{ (Theor. 3)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

so that,  $AZ = VC$  and the  $\angle ZAY =$  the  $\angle YCV$ , but the  $\angle^s ZAY$  and  $YCV$  are alternate angles

$\therefore$   $AZ$  or  $AB$  is parallel to  $VC$  (Theor. 13)

but  $AZ = ZB$  (given);  $\therefore$   $ZB = VC$ .

Two equal and parallel straight lines  $ZB$  and  $VC$  are joined towards the same parts by  $ZV$  and  $BC$ ,

$\therefore$   $ZV$  and  $BC$  are parallel (Theor. 20)

*or*,  $ZY$  is parallel to  $BC$ .

Q. E. D.

3. (See figure in Ex. 2).

Let  $ABC$  be a triangle, and  $Z, Y$  the middle points of  $AB, AC$  respectively. Join  $ZY$ .

It is required to prove that  $ZY$  is half of  $BC$ .

Produce  $ZY$  to any point  $V$  making  $YV = ZY$ . Join  $VC$ .

Proof—In the two  $\triangle^s AZY$  and  $YVC$

Because  $\begin{cases} AY = YC \text{ (given)} \\ ZY = YV \text{ (by construction)} \\ \text{and the } \angle AZY = \text{the } \angle VYC \text{ (Theor. 3)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

so that,  $AZ = VC$  and the  $\angle AZY = \text{the } \angle YVC$

but the  $\angle^s AZY$  and  $YVC$  are alternate angles

$\therefore AZ$  or  $AB$  is parallel to  $VC$  (Theor. 13)

also  $AZ = ZB$  (given),  $\therefore ZB = VC$

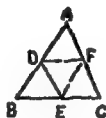
Two equal and parallel straight lines  $ZB$  and  $VC$  are joined towards the same parts by  $ZV$  and  $BC$ ,

$\therefore ZV$  and  $BC$  are equal and parallel (Theor. 20)

But  $ZY = YV$  (by construction)  $= \frac{1}{2} ZV$

$\therefore ZY = \frac{1}{2} BC$ .

4. Let  $ABC$  be a triangle,  $E, F$  the middle points of  $AB, AC$  respectively. Join  $DE, EF$  and  $FD$ .



Q. E. D.  
a triangle and  $D, E, F$  points of  $AB, BC, AC$  respectively. Join  $DE, EF$  and  $FD$ .

It is required to prove that, the straight lines  $DE, EF, FD$  divide the  $\triangle ABC$  into four triangles  $ADF, DBE, DEF$  and  $FEC$  which are identically equal.

Proof—Because  $D$  is the middle point of  $AB$ , and  $F$  is the middle point of  $AC$

$\therefore DF = \frac{1}{2} BC$  (proved in Ex. 3)

Similarly, it can be proved that  $DE = \frac{1}{2} AC$ , and  $FE = \frac{1}{2} AB$

But  $BE = EC$  (given)  $= \frac{1}{2} BC$

$\therefore DF = BE = EC$

Similarly,  $DE = AF = FC$ , and  $EF = AD = DB$ .

Now, in the two  $\triangle^s ADF$  and  $DBE$

Because  $\begin{cases} AD = DB \text{ (given)} \\ AF = DE \text{ (proved)} \\ \text{and } DF = BE \text{ (proved)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 7)

Again, in the two  $\triangle^s ADF$  and  $FEC$

Because  $\begin{cases} AF = FC \text{ (given)} \\ AD = FE \text{ (proved)} \\ \text{and } DF = EC \text{ (proved)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 7)

Again, in the two  $\triangle^s ADF$  and  $DEF$

Because  $\begin{cases} AD = EF \text{ (proved)} \\ AF = DE \text{ (proved)} \\ \text{and } DF \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

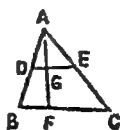
$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 7)

$\therefore$  four triangles  $ADF$ ,  $BDE$ ,  $FEC$  and  $DEF$  are identically equal.

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle ABC$  is divided into four triangles  $ADF$ ,  $BDE$ ,  $DEF$  and  $FEC$  by  $DE$ ,  $EF$ ,  $FC$  and these four triangles are identically equal.

Q. E. D.

5. Let  $ABC$  be a triangle and  $D$ ,  $E$  be the middle points of  $AB$ ,  $AC$  respectively. Join  $DE$ , straight line drawn the base  $BC$  cutting  $DE$  in  $G$ .



tively. Join  $DE$ , straight line drawn the base  $BC$  cutting

It is required to prove that  $AF$  is bisected at  $G$  by  $DE$

Proof—Because  $D$  is the middle point of  $AB$ , and  $E$  the middle point of  $AC$

$\therefore DE$  is parallel to  $BC$  (proved in Ex. 2)

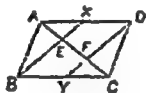
In the  $\triangle ABF$ , because  $D$  is the middle point of  $AB$ , and  $DG$  is parallel to  $BF$

$\therefore DG$  bisects  $AF$  at  $G$

What is true of  $AF$  is also true of any other straight line drawn from the vertex  $A$  to the base  $BC$

Q. E. D.

6. Let  $ABCD$  be a parallelogram, and  $X, Y$  the middle points of the opposite sides  $AD, BC$ .



Join  $BX, DY$  Join  $AC$  cutting  $BX$  and  $DY$  at  $E$  and  $F$  respectively

It is required to prove that the diagonal  $AC$  is trisected by  $BX$  and  $DY$ , or  $AE = EF = FC$

Proof—In the parallelogram  $ABCD$ ,  $AD = BC$  (Theor. 21)

and  $XD = \frac{1}{2}AD$ ,  $BY = \frac{1}{2}BC$  (given)

$\therefore XD = BY$ , also  $XD$  and  $BY$  are parallel.

Two equal and parallel straight lines  $XD$  and  $BY$  are joined towards the same parts by  $BX$  and  $DY$

$\therefore BX$  and  $DY$  are parallel (Theor. 20)

Now, in the  $\triangle AFD$ , because  $X$  is the middle point of  $AD$ , and  $XE$  is parallel to  $FD$  (proved)

$\therefore XE$  bisects  $AF$ , or  $AE = EF$  (proved in Ex. 1)

Similarly, in the  $\triangle BEC$ , because  $Y$  is the middle point of  $BC$ , and  $YF$  is parallel to  $BE$  (proved)

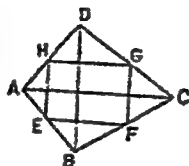
$\therefore YF$  bisects  $EC$ , or  $EF = FC$  (proved in Ex. 1)

$\therefore AE = EF = FC$ .

i. e., the diagonal  $AC$  is trisected by  $BX$  and  $DY$

Q. E. D.

7. Let  $ABCD$  be a quadrilateral and  $E, F, G, H$  be the middle points of  $AB, BC, CD$ , and  $DA$  respectively. Join  $EF, FG, GH$  and  $HE$ .



It is required to prove that the figure  $EFGH$  is a parallelogram.

Join  $AC$  and  $BD$ .

Proof—In the  $\triangle ABC$ , because  $E$  and  $F$  are the middle points of  $AB, BC$  respectively.

$\therefore EF$  is parallel to  $AC$  (proved in Ex. 2)

Similarly, in the  $\triangle ADC$ ,  $H, G$  being the middle points of  $AD, DC$  respectively,  $HG$  is parallel to  $AC$

$\therefore EF$  is parallel to  $HG$  (Theor 15)

Again, in the  $\triangle ABD$ , because  $E$  and  $H$  are the middle points of  $AB, AD$  respectively

$\therefore EH$  is parallel to  $BD$  (proved in Ex. 2)

Similarly, in the  $\triangle BDC$ ,  $F, G$  being the middle points of  $BC, CD$  respectively,  $FG$  is parallel to  $BD$

$\therefore EH$  is parallel to  $FG$  (Theor 15)

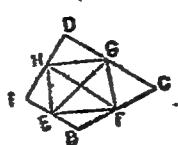
$\therefore$  in the quadrilateral  $EFGH$ , because  $EF$  is parallel to  $HG$ , and  $EH$  parallel to  $FG$ .

$\therefore$  the quadrilateral  $EFGH$  is a parallelogram

(From definition)

Q. E. D.

8. Let  $ABCD$  be a quadrilateral and  $E, F, G, H$ , be the middle points of  $AD, BC, CD, DA$  respectively.





Join  $EG$  and  $FH$  cutting at  $O$ .

It is required to prove that  $EG$  and  $FH$  bisect one another at  $O$ .

Join  $EF, FG, GH$  and  $HE$

**Proof**—In the quadrilateral  $ABCD$ , because  $E, F, G, H$  are the middle points of  $AB, BC, CD, DA$  respectively

$\therefore$  the figure  $EFGH$  is a parallelogram (proved in Ex. 7)

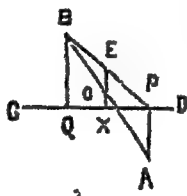
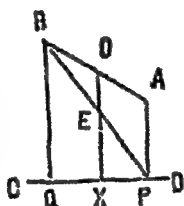
Now, the diagonals of a parallelogram bisect one another (Theor. 21 Cor 3)  $\therefore$

$\therefore$  the diagonals  $EG, FH$  of the parallelogram  $EFGH$  bisect one another at  $O$ .

$\therefore$  the straight lines  $EG, FH$  which join the middle points of opposite sides of the quadrilateral  $ABCD$  bisect one another.

Q E D.

9. Let  $CD$  be a straight line and  $AB$  another straight line whose middle point is  $O$ .  
 $AP$  be perpendicular from  $B, O$  and  $A$  to  $CD$



whose middle point is  $O$ .  
 Let  $BQ, OX,$   
 perpendiculars  
 from  $A$  to  $CD$

It is required to prove that  $OX = \frac{1}{2}(AP + BQ)$ , or  $\frac{1}{2}(AP - BQ)$ , according as  $A$  and  $B$  are on the same side, or on opposite sides of  $CD$ .

When  $A$  and  $B$  are on the same side of  $CD$ .

Join  $BP$  cutting  $OX$  at  $E$ .

**Proof**—Because  $BQ, OX$  and  $AP$  are perpendiculars to  $CD$

$\therefore BQ, OX$  and  $AP$  are parallel to one another (proved in Ex. 2 on page 41)

In the  $\triangle ABP$ , because  $O$  is the middle point of  $AB$ , and  $OE$  is parallel to  $AP$

$\therefore E$  is the middle point of  $BP$  (proved in Ex. 1)

$\therefore OE + EX = \frac{1}{2}(AP + BQ)$  (by adding together)

or,  $OX = \frac{1}{2}(AP + BQ)$

When A and B are on opposite sides of CD, AB and CD cut one another.

Join BP and produce XO to meet BP in E.

Because BQ, OX and AP are perpendiculars to CD

$\therefore$  BQ, OX and AP are parallel to one another (proved in Ex. 2 on page 41)

In the  $\triangle BAP$  because O is the middle point of AB and OE is parallel to AP

$\therefore$  E is the middle point BP (proved in Ex. 1)

Again, in the  $\triangle BAP$  because O and E are the middle points of AB and BP respectively,

$\therefore OE$  is  $\frac{1}{2}$  AP (proved in Ex. 3)

In the  $\triangle BQP$ , because E is the middle point of BP (proved), and EX is parallel to BQ

$\therefore$  X is the middle point of QP (proved in Ex. 1)

Again, in the  $\triangle BQP$ , because E, X are the middle points of BP, QP respectively

$\therefore EX$  is  $\frac{1}{2}$  of BQ (proved in Ex. 3)

Again, because OE is  $\frac{1}{2}$  of AP and EX  $\frac{1}{2}$  of BQ.

$\therefore EX - EO = \frac{1}{2}(BQ - AP)$

or,  $OX = \frac{1}{2}(BQ - AP)$

If AP is greater than BQ, then the middle point O of AB will be on the same side as the point A. In this case,  $OX = \frac{1}{2}(AP - BQ)$ .

Q. E. D.

If  $AP = 4.2$  cm. and  $BQ = 5.8$  cm.

then  $OX = \frac{1}{2} (AP + BQ) = \frac{1}{2} (4.2 + 5.8)$  cm.

$= \frac{1}{2}$  of 10 cm.  $= 5$  cm.

or,  $OX = \frac{1}{2} (BQ - AP) = \frac{1}{2} (5.8 - 4.2)$  cm.

$= \frac{1}{2}$  of 1.6 cm  $= .8$  cm.

10. Let  $AB, CD, EF$  be three parallel straight lines which cut off equal transversals  $GM$  and  $PS$ , so that  $HK = KL$ , and  $OQ = QR$



It is required to prove that  $KQ$  is the ARITHMETIC MEAN of  $HO$  and  $LR$ .

Join  $QL$  cutting  $KQ$  at  $N$ .

Proof.—In the  $\triangle HLO$ ,  $K$  is the middle point of  $HL$  (given), and  $KN$  is parallel to  $HO$ ,

$\therefore N$  is the middle point of  $LO$  (proved in Ex. 1)

$\therefore KN$  is  $\frac{1}{2}$  of  $HO$  (proved in Ex. 3)

Again, in the  $\triangle OLR$ ,  $N$  is the middle point of  $LO$  (proved), and  $Q$  is the middle point of  $OR$  (given).

$\therefore NQ$  is  $\frac{1}{2}$  of  $LR$  (proved in Ex. 3)

$\therefore KN + NQ = \frac{1}{2} (HO + LR)$

or,  $KQ = \frac{1}{2} (HO + LR)$

i. e.  $KQ$  is the ARITHMETIC MEAN of  $HO$  and  $LR$ .

Q. E. D.

11. Let ABCD be a trapezium in which AB, DC, are parallel, and equal to  $a$  cm. and  $b$  cm. respectively, and H, F the middle points of AD, BC respectively.



Join HF.

It is required to prove that HF is parallel to AB or CD.

Through F draw the straight line EFG parallel to AD meeting DC in E. Produce AB beyond B to meet EFG in G.

Proof.—In the quadrilateral ADEG, because AG is parallel to DE, and AD parallel to GE

$\therefore$  the quadrilateral ADEG is a parallelogram

$\therefore AD = EG$  and  $AG = DE$  (Theor. 21)

Because BG and EC are parallel, and GE meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle BGE$  or the  $\angle BGF =$  alternate  $\angle GEC$  or the  $\angle FEC$  (Theor. 14)

Now, in the two  $\triangle^s$  BFG and FEC

Because  $\begin{cases} BF = FC \text{ (given)} \\ \text{the } \angle BGF = \text{the } \angle FEC \text{ (proved)} \\ \text{and the } \angle BFG = \text{the } \angle EFC \text{ (Theor. 3)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 17)

so that,  $FG = EF$  and  $BG = EC$ .

Because  $AH = \frac{1}{2} AD$  (given);  $FG = EF = \frac{1}{2} GE$ , and  $AD = EG$  (proved)

$\therefore AH = GF$ , and since they are parallel

$\therefore HF$  and  $AG$  are also equal and parallel (Theor. 20)

i.e HF is parallel to AB

$\therefore$  HF is also parallel to DC (Theor. 15)

Now, HF = AG = DE (proved)

$\therefore$  HF =  $\frac{1}{2}$  (AG + DE)

But AG = AB + BG, and DE = DC - EC

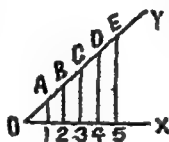
$\therefore$  AG + DE = AB + DC (since BG = EC, proved)

$\therefore$  HF =  $\frac{1}{2}$  (AB + DC)

=  $\frac{1}{2}$  (a + b) cm.

Q. E. D.

12 Let OX and OY be any two straight lines meeting at O and at any angle. Along OX five points, 1, 3, 4, 5 are marked at equal distances.



Take any point E in OY.

Join E5.

From 4, 3, 2, 1 draw parallels D4, C3, B2, A1 to E5 meeting OY in D, C, B, A.

It is required to prove that C3 is the mean of all five parallels A1, B2, C3, D4, E5.

Proof.—Because the straight line OX is divided into equal parts by 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and from 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, parallel straight lines are drawn cutting OY in A, B, C, D, E.

$\therefore$  OE is also divided into equal parts by A, B, C, D, E  
(Theor 22. Cor.)

Again, because BD42 is a trapezium, and C, 3 are the middle points of BD, 24 respectively

$\therefore$  C3 =  $\frac{1}{2}$  (B2 + D4) (proved in Ex. 11)

$\therefore$  2.C3 = (B2 + D4)

Again, because  $1AE5$  is a trapezium, and  $C, 3$  are the middle points of  $AE, 15$  respectively

$$\therefore C3 = \frac{1}{2} (A1 + E5) \text{ (proved in Ex. 11)}$$

$$\therefore 2 C3 = (A1 + E5)$$

$$\therefore A1 + B2 + C3 + D4 + E5 = 2.C3 + 2 C3 + C3 \\ = 5.C3$$

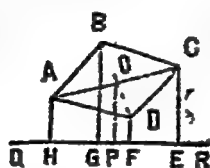
$$\therefore C3 = \frac{1}{5} (A1 + B2 + C3 + D4 + E5)$$

i.e.  $C3$  is the MEAN of all the five parallels.

Q. E. D.

The corresponding theorem for any odd number  $(2n+1)$  of parallels so drawn is that the  $(n+1)$  parallel is the mean of all the  $(2n-1)$  parallels.

13. Let  $ABCD$  be a parallelogram and  $QR$  any straight line outside it. From  $A, B, C, D$  perpendiculars  $AH, BG, DF, CE$  are drawn to  $QR$ .



It is required to prove that the sum of the perpendiculars  $AH$  and  $CE$  is equal to the sum of the perpendiculars  $BG$  and  $DF$ .

Join  $AC$  and  $BD$  cutting at  $O$ . From  $O$  draw  $OP$  perpendicular to  $QR$ .

Proof.—The diagonals  $AC, BD$  of the parallelogram  $ABCD$  bisect one another at  $O$  (Theor. 22. Cor. 3)

Because  $O$  is the middle point of  $AC$ , and from  $A, O, C$  perpendiculars  $AH, OP, CE$  are drawn to  $QR$

$$\therefore OP = \frac{1}{2} (AH + CE) \text{ (proved in Ex. 9)}$$

Again, because  $O$  is the middle point of  $BD$ , and from  $B, O, D$  perpendiculars  $BG, OP, DF$  are drawn to  $QR$

$$\therefore OP = \frac{1}{2} (BG + DF) \text{ (proved in Ex. 9)}$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{2} (AH + CE) = \frac{1}{2} (BG + DF)$$

$$\text{or, } AH + CE = BG + DF$$

Q. E. D.

14. Let  $ABC$  be an isosceles triangle in which  $AB, AC$  are equal. Let  $D$  be any point in  $BC$ , let  $DE, DF$  be perpendicular from  $D$  to  $AB, AC$  respectively, and  $CG$  be perpendicular from  $C$  to  $AB$ .



It is required to prove that  $CG$  is equal to the sum of  $DE$  and  $DF$ .

From  $D$  draw  $DH$  perpendicular to  $CG$

Proof.—

The  $\angle EGH$  is a rt.  $\angle$ , and the  $\angle GHD$  is also a rt.  $\angle$  (by construction)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s EGH + GHD = 2$  rt.  $\angle^s$

$\therefore EG$  and  $HD$  are parallel (Theor. 14)

Similarly  $GH$  and  $DE$  are parallel

In the quadrilateral  $EDHG$ ,  $GH$  is parallel to  $ED$  and  $EG$  parallel to  $HD$

$\therefore$  the quadrilateral  $EDHG$  is a parallelogram

so that,  $ED = GH$  (Theor. 21)

In the  $\triangle ABC$ , because  $AB = AC$  (given)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC =$  the  $\angle ACB$  (Theor. 5)

Now since  $AB$  and  $HD$  are parallel, and  $BC$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC =$  the  $\angle HDC$  (Theor. 13)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle HDC =$  the  $\angle ACB$  or the  $\angle FCD$ .

Now, in the two  $\triangle^s HDC$  and  $FDC$

Because  $\begin{cases} \text{the } \angle DHC = \text{the } \angle DFC \text{ (being right angles)} \\ \text{the } \angle HDC = \text{the } \angle FCD \text{ (proved)} \\ \text{and } DC \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 17)

so that,  $CH = DF$

Also,  $GH = DE$  (proved)

$\therefore CH + GH = DF + DE$

or,  $CG = DF + DE$

Similarly, by drawing a perpendicular from  $B$  to  $AC$  it can be proved that the perpendicular is equal to the sum of  $DF$  and  $DE$ .

It can be proved by drawing perpendiculars from any point in  $BC$  to the equal sides  $AB$ ,  $AC$ , that the sum of these perpendiculars is equal to the perpendicular drawn either from  $C$  on  $AB$  or from  $B$  on  $AC$ .

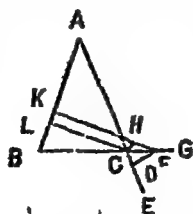
But the perpendicular drawn either from  $C$  on  $AB$  or from  $B$  on  $AC$  is constant.

$\therefore$  the sum of the perpendiculars drawn from any point in  $BC$  to the equal sides is also constant.

Q. E. D.

It is required to find the modification in the above proved property, when the perpendiculars are drawn from any point in the prolongation of the base  $BC$  to the equal sides  $AB$ ,  $AC$ .

Let  $ABC$  be an isosceles triangle in which  $AB$  and  $AC$  are equal. Produce  $BC$  beyond  $C$  to any point  $G$  (or prolongation of  $BC$ ). Let  $F$  be any point in  $CG$  (or prolongation of  $BC$ ).



From  $F$  draw  $FK$  perpendicular to  $AB$ , and  $FD$  perpendicular to  $AC$  produced. From  $C$  draw  $CL$  and  $CH$  perpendiculars to  $AB$  and  $FK$  respectively.



Proof — Because  $KH$  and  $LC$  are perpendiculars to  $AB$   
 $\therefore HK$  and  $CL$  are parallel (proved in Ex. 2 on page 41)  
 Similarly,  $CH$  and  $KL$  or  $AB$  are parallel

$\therefore$  the figure  $KLCH$  is a parallelogram, so that  $KH = LC$  (Theor. 21)

In the  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $AB = AC$  (given)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC =$  the  $\angle ACB$  (Theor. 5)

Because  $AB$  and  $CH$  are parallel and  $BG$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC =$  the  $\angle HCG$  (Theor. 13).

$\therefore$  the  $\angle HCF =$  the  $\angle ACB =$  the vertically opp.  $\angle DCF$

Now, in the two  $\triangle^s HCF$  and  $CDF$

Because  $\begin{cases} \text{the } \angle CHF = \text{the } \angle CDF \text{ (being rt. } \angle^s) \\ \text{the } \angle HCF = \text{the } \angle DCF \text{ (proved)} \\ \text{and } CF \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 17)

so that,  $HF = DF$

Also,  $KH = CL$  (proved)

$\therefore CL = KF - FH$

$= KF - FD$

$KF$  may be greater or less than  $FD$  according as  $F$  is on  $BC$  produced beyond  $C$ , or on  $CB$  produced beyond  $B$

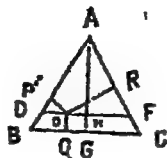
$\therefore CL = FK \setminus FD$

Similarly, by drawing perpendicular from  $B$  on  $AC$  it can be proved that the perpendicular is equal to the difference of  $FK$  and  $FD$ .

The modification in the foregoing exercise is that the perpendicular drawn either from  $B$  on  $AC$  or from  $C$  on  $AB$

is equal to the difference of the perpendiculars drawn from any point in the prolongation of  $BC$  on equal sides  $AB$ ,  $AC$ .

15. Let  $ABC$  be an equilateral triangle and  $AG$  the perpendicular drawn from  $A$  on  $BC$ . Let  $O$  be any point within the triangle  $ABC$ , and let  $OP$ ,  $OQ$ ,  $OR$  be perpendiculars to  $AB$ ,  $BC$ ,  $CA$  respectively.



It is required to prove that  $AG$  is equal to the sum of  $OP$ ,  $OQ$  and  $OR$ .

From  $O$  draw  $DHF$  parallel to  $BC$ , cutting  $AB$ ,  $AG$  and  $AC$  at  $D$ ,  $H$  and  $F$  respectively.

Proof.—Because  $DF$  and  $BC$  are parallel and  $AB$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ADF =$  the  $\angle ABC$ . (Theor. 13)

Again, because  $DF$  and  $BC$  are parallel and  $AC$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle AFD =$  the  $\angle ACB$  (Theor. 13)

But the  $\angle ABC =$  the  $\angle ACB$  (being angles of an equilateral triangle)  $= 60^\circ$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ADF =$  the  $\angle AFD = 60^\circ$

$\therefore$  the  $\triangle ADF$  is an equilateral triangle.

Because  $DH$  and  $BG$  are parallel and  $AG$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle DHA =$  the  $\angle AGB = 90^\circ$

In the equilateral  $\triangle ADF$  the sum of the perpendiculars  $OP$  and  $OR$  drawn from  $O$  in  $DF$  on  $AD$ ,  $AF$  respectively, is equal to the perpendiculars drawn either from  $D$  on  $AF$  or from  $F$  on  $AD$  (proved in Ex. 14)

But in an equilateral triangle the perpendiculars drawn from the angular points to the opposite sides are equal

$\therefore$  the perpendicular  $AH$  is equal to the sum of the perpendiculars  $OP$  and  $OR$ .

Because  $OQ$  and  $HG$  are perpendiculars

$\therefore OQ$  and  $HG$  are parallel (proved in Ex. 2 on page 41).

In the quadrilateral  $OHQO$ ,  $OQ$  and  $HG$  are parallel (proved), and  $OH$  and  $QG$  are parallel (by construction)

$\therefore$  the figure  $OHQO$  is a parallelogram

so that,  $OQ = HG$  (Theor. 21)

Because  $AH = OP + OR$ , and  $HG = OQ$

$\therefore AH + HG = OP + OR + OQ$

or,  $AG = OP + OQ + OR$

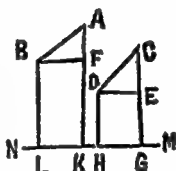
Similarly, it can be proved that each of the perpendiculars drawn from  $B$ ,  $C$  on  $AC$ ,  $AB$  is equal to the sum of  $OP$ ,  $OQ$  and  $OR$ .

But  $AG$ , being a perpendicular from an angular point of an equilateral triangle to the opposite side, is constant.

$\therefore (OP + OQ + OR)$  is also constant wherever the point  $O$  may be taken within the triangle  $ABC$ .

Q. E. D.

16. Let  $AB$  and  $CD$  be two equal and parallel straight lines, and  $NM$  a third straight line on which perpendiculars  $BL$ ,  $BK$ ,  $AK$ ,  $DH$ ,  $CG$  are drawn from  $B$ ,  $A$ ,  $D$ ,  $C$  respectively. Then  $LK$  and  $HG$  are the projections of  $BA$ ,  $DC$  on the straight line  $NM$ .



It is required to prove that  $LK$  and  $HG$  are equal.

From  $B$  draw  $BF$  parallel to  $LK$  meeting  $AK$  in  $F$  and from  $D$  draw  $DE$  parallel to  $HG$  meeting  $CG$  in  $E$

Proof—Because  $AK$ ,  $BL$ ,  $DH$ ,  $CG$  are perpendiculars to the same straight line  $NM$

$\therefore AK$ ,  $BL$ ,  $DH$ ,  $CG$  are parallel to one another (proved Ex. 2 on page 41)

Again, because  $BA$  is parallel to  $DC$ , and  $AF$  is parallel to  $CE$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle BAF =$  the  $\angle DCE$

Because  $LK$  and  $BF$  are parallel and  $AK$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle BFA =$  the  $\angle LKA = 90^\circ$

Because  $DE$  and  $HG$  are parallel and  $CG$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle DEC =$  the  $\angle HGC = 90^\circ$

Now, in the two  $\triangle^s ABF$  and  $CDE$

Because  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the } \angle BAF = \text{the } \angle DCE \text{ (proved)} \\ \text{the } \angle AFB = \text{the } \angle CED \text{ (being rt. } \angle^s) \\ \text{and } AB = CD \text{ (given)} \end{array} \right.$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 17)

so that,  $BF = DE$ .

In the quadrilateral  $BFKL$ ,  $BF$  is parallel to  $LK$  (by construction) and  $BL$  parallel to  $FK$  (proved)

$\therefore$   $BFKL$  is a parallelogram

so that,  $BF = LK$  (Theor. 21)

Similarly, the quadrilateral  $DHGE$  is a parallelogram so that,  $DE = HG$  (Theor. 21)

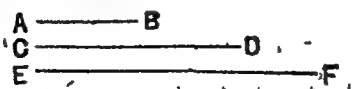
But  $BF = DE$  (proved)

$\therefore LK = HG$ .


Q. E. D.

Page 68.

1. By means of a diagonal scale draw the straight lines  
 $AB = 1.25''$ ,  $CD = 2.72''$  and  $EF = 3.08''$ .



2. By means of a diagonal scale draw a straight line  
 $AB = 2.68''$  long. Measure it in centi-  
 metres and milli- metres; it will be  
 found to be 6.80 cm. long.



3 By means of a diagonal scale draw a straight line  $AB = 5.7$  cm. in length. Measure it in inches and it will be found to be  $2.24''$  long.

By calculation  $AB = 5.7 \times .3937'' = 2.24''$  nearly.

4. Draw by means of a diagonal scale a straight line  $AB = 3.15''$  long. Measure it in centimetres and millimetres and it will be found to be 8 cm. long.

$$8 \text{ cm} = 3.15''$$

$$\therefore 1 \text{ cm} = \frac{3.15}{8} = 39'' \text{ (correct to two decimal places)}$$

5. Draw by means of a diagonal scale straight lines  $AB = 2.9$  cm and  $CD = 6.2$  cm. Measure  $AB$  and  $CD$  in inches and it will be found that  $AB = 1.14''$  and  $CD = 2.44''$

$$1.14'' = 2.9 \text{ cm.} ; \therefore 1'' = \frac{2.9}{1.14} = 2.54 \text{ cm.}$$

$$2.44'' = 6.2 \text{ cm.} ; \therefore 1'' = \frac{6.2}{2.44} = 2.54 \text{ cm.}$$

$$\therefore \text{average} = \frac{1}{2} (2.54 + 2.54) \text{ cm} = 2.54 \text{ cm.}$$

6. A distance of 100 miles is represented by  $1''$



$\therefore$  a distance of 1 mile is represented by  $\frac{1}{160}$  inch

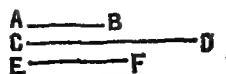
$\therefore$  a distance of 336 miles is represented by  $\frac{336}{160}$ , or  $3.36''$

$\therefore$  a distance of 408 miles is represented by  $\frac{408}{160}$ , or  $4.08''$

Hence, draw by means of a diagonal scale straight lines  $AB = 3.36''$  and  $CD = 4.08''$ .

Then  $AB$  represents 336 miles and  $CD$  408 miles.

7. 1 kilometre or 1000 metres represented by 1 inch



$\therefore$  1 metre is represented by  $\frac{1}{1000}$  inch

$\therefore$  850 metres are represented by  $\frac{850}{1000}$ , or  $\cdot 85''$

$\therefore$  2980 metres are represented by  $\frac{2980}{1000}$ , or  $2\cdot 98''$

$\therefore$  1010 metres are represented by  $\frac{1010}{1000}$ , or  $1\cdot 01''$

Hence, draw by means of a diagonal scale straight lines  $AB = 85''$ ,  $CD = 2\ 98''$  and  $EF = 1\cdot 01''$ .

Then  $AB$  represents 850 metres,  $CD$  2980 metres, and  $EF$  1010 metres.

8. 100 links are represented by 1"



$\therefore$  1 link is represented by  $\frac{1}{100}$  inch

$\therefore$  417 links are represented by  $\frac{417}{100}$ , or  $4\ 17''$

Hence, by means of a diagonal scale draw a straight line  $AB = 4\ 17''$  long.

Then  $AB$  represents 417 links. Measure it in centimetres and millimetres, and it will be found to be 10·6 cm.

9. 5 kilometres are represented by 1 cm.



$\therefore$  42·500 kilometres are represented by  $\frac{42\cdot 500}{5}$ , or 8·500 cm.

Hence, draw by means of a diagonal scale a straight line  $AB = 8\ 500$  cm.

Then  $AB$  represents 42·500 kilometres.

Measure it in inches to the nearest hundredths, and it will be found to be  $3\cdot 35''$  long.

10 Because a straight line equal to  $2\cdot75''$  represents 55 miles

$\therefore 1''$  represents  $\frac{55}{2\cdot75}$ , or 20 miles.

Again, because 1 cm. =  $\cdot3937''$

$\therefore 1'' = \frac{1}{\cdot3937}$  cm.

also 1 kilometre =  $\frac{5}{8}$  miles nearly

$\therefore 1$  mile =  $\frac{8}{5}$  kilometres.

$\therefore \frac{1}{\cdot3937}$  cm. represents  $20 \times \frac{8}{5}$ , or 32 kilometres

$\therefore 1$  cm. represents  $32 \times \cdot3937$ , or 12·6 kilometres nearly.

11. Since  $1''$  represents 35 miles.

$\therefore 4\ 2''$  represent  $35 \times 4\ 2$ , or 147 miles (accurately)

$\therefore$  True distance = 147 miles.

Because 1 kilometre =  $\frac{5}{8}$  miles nearly

$\therefore 1$  mile =  $\frac{8}{5}$  kilometres

$\therefore 4\ 2''$  represent  $147 \times \frac{8}{5}$ , or 235 kilometres (approximately)

$\therefore$  approximate distance = 235 kilometres.

also,  $1''$  represents  $35 \times \frac{8}{5}$ , or 56 kilometres

But  $1'' = \frac{1}{\cdot3937}$  cm.

$\therefore \frac{1}{\cdot3937}$  cm. represents 56 kilometres

$\therefore 1$  cm. represents 22 kilometres nearly.

$\therefore$  The scale used in metric measure is 1 cm. representing 22 kilometres nearly.

12.  $2\frac{1}{2}''$  or  $\frac{5}{2}''$  represent  $37\frac{1}{2}$  or  $\frac{75}{2}$  miles.

$\therefore 1''$  represents  $\frac{75 \times 2}{2 \times 5}$ , or 15 miles.

7 cm. represent 88 kilometres

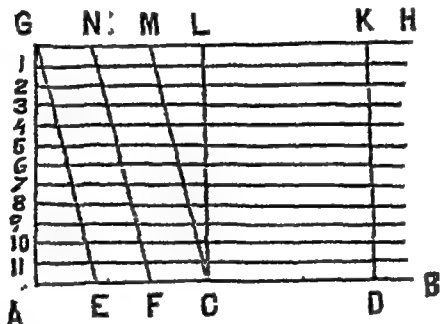
$\therefore 1$  cm. represents  $\frac{88}{7}$  kilometres.

But 1 cm. = .3937" and 1 kilometre =  $\frac{5}{8}$  mile nearly.

$\therefore .3937''$  represents  $\frac{88}{7} \times \frac{5}{8}$ , or  $\frac{55}{7}$  miles.

$\therefore 1''$  represents  $\frac{55}{7 \times .3937}$ , or 20 miles (nearly)

13. Let AB be a straight line of any length. From AB cut off AC, equal to 2



CD,.....each cm.

Then AC, CD,.....each represents one yard.

From A draw AG (of any length, perpendicular to AB.

From G draw GH parallel to AB. From C, D,..... draw CL, DK,..... perpendiculars to AB meeting GH in L, K,.....

Divide AC into three equal parts by E and F. Divide GL into three equal parts by N, M. Join MC, NF, GE.

Then AE, EF, FC each represents one foot.

Divide AG into twelve equal parts by 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11. Through these points draw parallels to AB. These parts represent inch divisions.

The scale is thus complete.

In the  $\triangle MCL$ , ML represents 1 foot or 12 inches, 1st parallel 11 inches, 2nd parallel 10 inches, and so on, C represents 0 inch.



In the trapezium **MCDK**, **CD** represents 1 yard, 11th parallel 1 yd 1 in., 10th parallel 1 yd. 2 in., and so on, **MK** represents 1 yd. 1 ft.

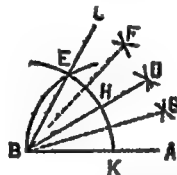
In the trapezium **NFDK**, **FD** represents 1 yd. 1 ft., 11th parallel 1 yd 1 ft 1 in., 10th parallel 1 yd. 1 ft. 2 in., and so on, **NK** represents 1 yd. 2 ft.

In the trapezium **GEDK**, **ED** represents 1 yd. 2 ft., 11th parallel 1 yd. 2 ft. 1 in., 10th parallel 1 yd. 2 ft. 2 in., and so on, **GK** represents 2 yds

In the  $\triangle GAE$ , **AE** represents, 1 ft., 11th parallel 11 in., 10th parallel 10 in., 9th parallel 9 in., and so on.

### Page 79.

1. It is required to construct an angle of  $60^\circ$ , and to divide it into four equal parts.



**Construction.**—Take a straight line **AB** of any length.

Take any point **K** in **AB**. With centres **B** and **K**, and radii equal to **BK** draw two arcs cutting at **E**. Join **BE** and produce it to any point **C**.

Then **CBA** is the required angle of  $60^\circ$ .

With the centres **E**, **K**, and radii of equal lengths draw two arcs cutting at **D**.

Join **BD**, cutting the arc **EK** at **H**.

Then the  $\angle CBA$  is bisected by **BD** (Prob. 1)

With the centres **H**, **E**, and radii of equal lengths draw two arcs cutting at **F**. Join **BF**.

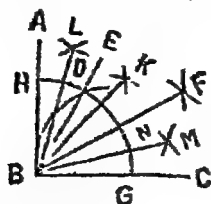
Then the  $\angle CBD$  is bisected by **BF** (Prob. 1)

With the centres **H**, **K**, and radii of equal lengths draw two arcs cutting at **G**. Join **BG**.

Then the  $\angle DBA$  is bisected by **BG** (Prob. 1)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle CBA$  is divided into four equal parts, by **BF**, **BD** and **BG**.

2. It is required to trisect a right angle.



Let  $ABC$  be a right angle

With the centre  $B$  and radius of any length draw an arc cutting  $AB$ ,  $BC$  at  $H$ ,  $G$  respectively.

With the centre  $G$  and radius  $GB$  draw another arc cutting the former arc  $HG$  at  $D$ . Join  $BD$  and produce it to any point  $E$ .

Then the  $\angle EBC$  is  $60^\circ$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABE = 90^\circ - 60^\circ = 30^\circ$ .

With the centres  $D$  and  $G$ , and radii of equal lengths draw two arcs cutting at  $F$ . Join  $BF$

Then the  $\angle EBC$  is bisected by  $BF$  (Prob. 1)

Because the  $\angle EBC = 60^\circ$

$\therefore$  each of the  $\angle^s EBF$ ,  $FBC = 30^\circ$

also the  $\angle ABE = 30^\circ$

$\therefore$  the rt  $\angle ABC$  is trisected by  $BE$ ,  $BF$ .

Suppose  $BF$  cuts the arc  $HG$  at  $N$

With the centres  $H$ ,  $D$ , and radii of equal lengths draw two arcs cutting at  $L$ . Join  $BL$

Then the  $\angle ABE$  is bisected by  $BL$  (Prob. 1)

With the centres  $N$ ,  $D$ , and radii of equal lengths draw two arcs cutting at  $K$ . Join  $BK$ .

Then the  $\angle EBF$  is bisected by  $BK$  (Prob. 1)

With the centres  $N$ ,  $G$ , and radii of equal lengths draw two arcs cutting at  $M$ . Join  $BM$ .

Then the  $\angle FBC$  is bisected by  $BM$  (Prob. 1)

But each of the  $\angle^s ABE$ ,  $EBF$  and  $FBC = 30^\circ$ ,

and the  $\angle^s ABE$ ,  $EBF$  and  $FBC$  are bisected by  $BL$ ,  $BK$  and  $BM$  respectively,

$\therefore$  each of the  $\angle^s$  ABL, LBE, EBK, KBF, FBM and MBC =  $15^\circ$ .

$\therefore$  the  $\angle$  KBC =  $45^\circ$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle$  KBC is trisected by BF, BM.

It is required to show how to trisect an angle of  $45^\circ$ .

Let KBC be an angle of  $45^\circ$ .

At B make the  $\angle$  CBE =  $60^\circ$ ,  $\therefore$  the  $\angle$  EBK =  $60^\circ - 45^\circ = 15^\circ$

Bisect the  $\angle$  EBC by BF (by Prob. 1)

$\therefore$  each of the  $\angle^s$  EBF, FBC =  $30^\circ$

The  $\angle$  EBF =  $30^\circ$  and the  $\angle$  EBK =  $15^\circ$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle$  KBF =  $30^\circ - 15^\circ = 15^\circ$

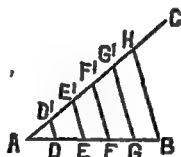
Bisect the  $\angle$  FBC by BM (by Prob. 1)

$\therefore$  each of the  $\angle^s$  FBM, MBC =  $15^\circ$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle$  KBC of  $45^\circ$  is trisected by BF, BM

Q. E. F.

3. Draw a line AB = 6.7 cm. long.



It is required to divide it into five equal parts.

At A make any convenient angle BAC

From AC mark off five equal parts of any length AD', D'E', E'F', F'G', G'H

Join HB and from G', F', E', D' draw G'G, F'F, E'E, D'D parallels to HB meeting AB in G, F, E, D respectively.

Then AB is divided into five equal parts at the points D, E, F and G (Prob. 7).

Measure one of the parts, say AD, in inches and it will be found to be 5.3"

AB = 6.7 cm

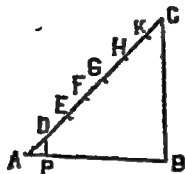
$\therefore$  each of the five equal divisions =  $\frac{6.7}{5} = 1.34$  cm.

But 1 cm. = .3937 inch

$\therefore 1.34 \text{ cm.} = 1.34 \times .3937'' = .53''$  nearly.

Q. E. F.

4. Draw a line  $AB = 3.72''$  long.



It is required to cut off one-seventh part of it.

At A make any convenient angle BAC.

From AC cut off seven equal parts AD, DE, EF, FG, GH, HK and KC. Join BC. From D draw DP parallel to BC meeting AB in P

Then AP is one-seventh part of AB (Prob. 7)

Measure AP in centimetres and nearest millimetres, and it will be found to be 1.3 cm.

$AB = 3.72''$ .

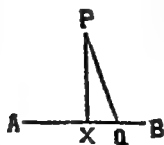
$\therefore AP = \frac{1}{7} \cdot AB = \frac{1}{7} \times 3.72''$

But 1 inch =  $\frac{1}{.3937}$  cm.

$\therefore AP = \frac{1}{7} \times 3.72 \times \frac{1}{.3937} = 1.3 \text{ cm.}$  nearly.

Q. E. F.

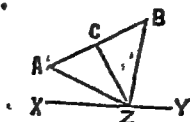
5. Let AB be a straight line, and X any point in it at which a perpendicular  $XP = 1.8''$  is drawn.



With the centre P, and radius =  $3''$  draw an arc cutting AB at Q. Join PQ. Then PQ is the required oblique.

Measure XQ and it will be found to be  $2\frac{1}{4}''$  long.

6. Let  $XY$  be the given straight line, and let  $A$  and  $B$  be the two given points.



It is required to find a point in  $XY$  which is equidistant from  $A$  and  $B$ .

Construction — Join  $AB$  and bisect it in  $C$  (by Prob. 2)

At  $C$  draw  $CZ$  perpendicular to  $AB$ , meeting  $XY$  in  $Z$ . Then  $Z$  is the required point.

Join  $AZ$  and  $BZ$

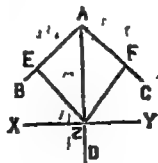
Proof — In the two  $\triangle^s ACZ$  and  $BCZ$ ,

Because  $\begin{cases} AC=BC \text{ (by construction)} \\ CZ \text{ is common to both} \\ \text{and the } \angle ACZ = \text{the } \angle BCZ \text{ (being rt } \angle^s) \end{cases}$   
 $\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects, (Theor. 4)  
 so that,  $AZ=BZ$

Q E D

This problem is impossible when the two given points  $A$  and  $B$  are so situated that the straight line  $CZ$  bisecting  $AB$  at right angles is parallel to  $XY$ .

7. Let  $XY$  be a straight line, and let  $AB, AC$  be two lines intersecting at  $A$ .



It is required to find a point in  $XY$  which is equidistant from  $AB$  and  $AC$ .

Construction — Bisect the  $\angle BAC$  (by Prob. 1) by the straight line  $AD$  cutting  $XY$  in  $Z$ .

Then Z is the required point.

From Z draw  $ZE, ZF$  perpendiculars to  $AB, AC$  respectively.

Proof.—In the two  $\triangle^s AEZ$  and  $AFZ$

because  $\begin{cases} AZ \text{ is common to both} \\ \text{the } \angle EAZ = \text{the } \angle FAZ \text{ (by construction)} \\ \text{and the } \angle AEZ = \text{the } \angle AFZ \text{ (being rt } \angle^s) \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 17)

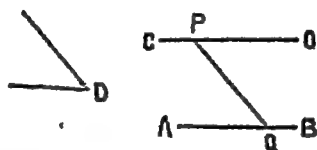
so that,  $EZ = FZ$

$\therefore$  Z is equidistant from two intersecting lines  $AB$  and  $AC$

Q. E. F.

This problem is impossible when the two intersecting lines  $AB, AC$  are so situated that the line  $AD$  bisecting the  $\angle BAC$  is parallel to  $XY$ .

8. Let  $AB$  be the given straight line,  $P$  the given point and  $D$  the given angle.



It is required to draw from the point  $P$  a straight line  $PQ$  making with  $AB$  an angle equal to the  $\angle D$

Construction —Through  $P$  draw  $CO$  parallel to  $AB$ . At  $P$  make an angle  $OPQ = \text{the } \angle D$ , the arm  $PQ$  meeting  $AB$  in  $Q$

Then  $PQ$  is the required line.

Proof.—Because  $CO$  and  $AB$  are parallel, and  $PQ$  meets them

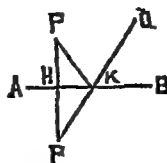
$\therefore$  the  $\angle OPQ = \text{the alternate } \angle PQA$  (Theor. 14)

But the  $\angle OPQ = \text{the } \angle D$  (by construction)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle PQA = \text{the } \angle D$ .

Q. E. F.

9. Let  $AB$  be a straight line, and  $P, Q$  two given points on the same side of  $AB$ .



It is required to draw two lines from  $P$  and  $Q$  which meet in  $AB$  and make equal angles with it.

**Construction** — From  $P$  draw  $PH$  perpendicular to  $AB$  and produce  $PH$  to  $P'$ , making  $HP' = PH$ . Join  $P'K$  cutting  $AB$  at  $K$ . Join  $PK$ .

Then  $PK$  and  $QK$  are the required lines.

**Proof.**—In the two  $\triangle^s PHK$  and  $P'HK$   
 because  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} PH = P'H \text{ (by construction)} \\ HK \text{ is common to both} \\ \text{and the } \angle PHK = \text{the } \angle P'HK \text{ (being rt. } \angle^s) \end{array} \right.$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal, in all respects (Theor. 4)

so that, the  $\angle PKH = \text{the } \angle P'KH$

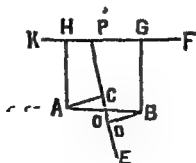
But the  $\angle P'KH = \text{the vertically opp. } \angle QKB$  (Theor. 3)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle PKH$  or the  $\angle PKA = \text{the } \angle QKB$ .

$\therefore$  the lines  $PK, QK$  meeting  $AB$  in  $K$  make equal  $\angle^s$   $PKA$  and  $QKB$  with  $AB$

Q. E. F.

10 Let  $P, A, B$  be the three given points.



It is required to draw a straight line through the given point  $P$  such that the perpendiculars drawn to it from  $A$  and  $B$  are equal.

(i) **Construction.**—Join AB. Through P draw KPF parallel to AB. From A and B draw AH, BG perpendiculars to KF.

Then KPF is the required line.

**Proof**—The  $\angle AHG = 1$  rt.  $\angle$ , also the  $\angle BGH = 1$  rt.  $\angle$  (by construction)

$$\therefore \angle^s AHG + BGH = 2 \text{ rt. } \angle^s$$

$\therefore$  AH and BG are parallel (Theor. 13)

In the quadrilateral ABGH, AH is parallel to BG (proved) and HG parallel to AB (by construction)

$\therefore$  ABGH is a parallelogram.

$\therefore AH = GB$  (Theor. 21)

$\therefore$  the perpendiculars AH and GB drawn from A, B respectively to the straight line KF passing through P are equal.

$\therefore$  KF is the required line.

(ii) **Construction**—Bisect AB at O. Join PO and produce it to any point E. From A and B draw AC and BD perpendiculars to PE.

Then PE is the required line.

**Proof**—In the  $\triangle^s AOC$  and  $BOD$

Because  $\begin{cases} AO = BO \text{ (by construction)} \\ \text{the } \angle AOC = \text{the } \angle BOD \text{ (Theor. 3)} \\ \text{and the } \angle ACO = \text{the } \angle BDO \text{ (being rt. } \angle^s) \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 17)

so that,  $AC = BD$

$\therefore$  the perpendiculars AC, BD drawn from A, B respectively to the straight line PE are equal.

$\therefore$  PE is the required line.

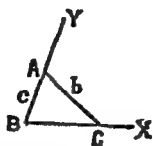
Q. E. F.

This problem is not always possible. It is impossible when the three points A, B, P are in the same straight line, and P does not lie at the middle point of the line joining A and B.



## Page 82

(i) To construct a triangle  $ABC$  when the angle  $B$  is given and  $b$  is greater than  $c$ .

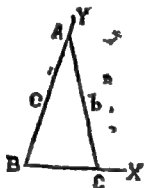


**Construction**—Make an angle  $YBX =$  the given  $\angle B$ . From  $BY$  cut off a part  $BA = c$ . With the centre  $A$  and radius  $= b$ , draw an arc cutting  $BX$  at  $C$ . Join  $AC$ .

Then  $ABC$  is the required triangle.

Only one triangle can be constructed with the given parts. The nature of the triangle  $ABC$  depends on the lengths of the given sides and the magnitude of the given angle.

(ii) To construct a triangle  $ABC$  when the angle  $B$  is given and  $b$  is equal to  $c$ .

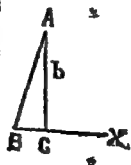


**Construction**—Make an angle  $YBX =$  the given  $\angle B$ . From  $BY$  cut off a part  $BA = c$ . With the centre  $A$  and radius  $= b$  draw an arc cutting  $BX$  at  $C$ . Join  $AC$ .

Then  $ABC$  is the required triangle.

Only one triangle can be constructed with the given parts which has  $\angle B = \angle C$ , so that the figure is an isosceles triangle.

(iii) To construct a triangle  $ABC$  when angle  $B$  is given,  $c$  is given and  $b$  is equal to the perpendicular from  $A$  to the opposite side  $BC$ .

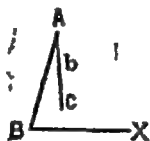


**Construction.**—Make an angle  $ABX =$  the given  $\angle B$  making the arm  $BA = c$ . With the centre  $A$  and radius  $= b$  draw an arc touching  $BX$  at  $C$ . Join  $AC$ .

Then  $ABC$  is the required triangle.

Only one triangle right-angled at  $C$  can be constructed with the given parts.

(iv) To construct a triangle  $ABC$  when angle  $B$  is given,  $c$  is given and  $b$  is less than the perpendicular from  $A$  on  $BC$ .

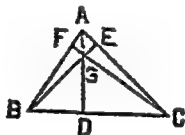


**Construction**—Make an angle  $ABX =$  the given  $\angle B$  making the arm  $BA = c$ . With the centre  $A$  and radius  $= b$  draw an arc. This arc does not touch the side  $BC$ .

Hence no triangle can be constructed with the given parts.

### Page 84.

1. It is required to construct a triangle whose sides are 7.5 cm., 6.2 cm., and 5.3 cm.



Make a straight line  $BC = 7.5$  cm. With the centres  $B$  and  $C$ , and radii equal to 5.3 and 6.2 cm respectively draw two arcs cutting at  $A$ . Join  $BA$  and  $CA$ .

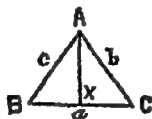
Then  $ABC$  is the required triangle.

Draw  $AD$  perpendicular from  $A$  to  $BC$ ,  $CF$  perpendicular from  $C$  to  $AB$ , and  $BE$  perpendicular from  $B$  to  $AC$ . These perpendiculars cut at  $G$ .

Measure  $AD$ ,  $CF$  and  $BE$ , and it will be found that  $AD=5.2$  cm.,  $CF=6.1$  cm. and  $BE=4.3$  cm.

Q. E. F.

2. It is required to draw a triangle  $ABC$ , having given  $a=3''$ ,  $b=2.5''$  and  $c=2.75''$



Take a straight line  $BC=a$ . With the centres  $B$  and  $C$  and radii equal to  $c$  and  $b$  respectively draw two arcs cutting at  $A$ . Join  $BA$  and  $CA$ .

Then  $ABC$  is the required triangle.

Bisect the  $\angle BAC$  (Prob. 1) by the straight line  $AX$  meeting  $BC$  in  $X$ .

Measure  $BX$  and  $CX$ , and it will be found that  $BX=1.57''$  and  $CX=1.43''$ .

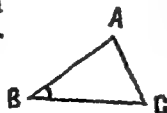
$$\frac{BX}{CX} = \frac{1.57}{1.43} = 1.0979 = 1.10 \text{ (correct to two decimal places)}$$

and  $\frac{c}{b} = \frac{2.75}{2.5} = 1.10$ . These two results allowing for probable errors in measurement may be regarded as identical

$$\therefore \frac{BX}{CX} = \frac{c}{b}.$$

Q. E. F.

3. It is required to draw a plan (1 inch to 100 yds.) of a triangular field in which two sides are 315 yds., 260 yds., and the included angle  $= 39^\circ$ .



Construct an angle  $ABC=39^\circ$  having the arms  $AB=315''$  and  $BC=260''$ . Join  $AC$ .

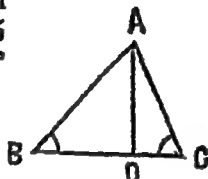
Then  $ABC$  is the required triangular field.

Measure AC and it will be found to be 27 long.

Hence the side AC or the remaining side of the field = 200 yards.

Q E F.

4. It is required to draw a plan (1 cm. to 10 metres) of a triangular plot of the base BC is 75 at B and C are  $47^\circ$  metres and the angles and  $68^\circ$  respectively.



Take  $BC = 75$  cm. At B make an angle  $= 47^\circ$  and at C make an angle  $= 68^\circ$  the two arms meeting at A. Then ABC is the required triangular plot.

The  $\angle A + B + C$  of the  $\triangle ABC = 180^\circ$  (Inf. 1 Theor. 16)

Put the  $\angle B = 47^\circ$  and  $\angle C = 68^\circ$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle A = 180^\circ - (68^\circ + 47^\circ)$   
 $= 180^\circ - 115^\circ = 65^\circ$ .

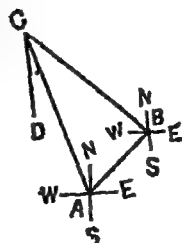
Measure AB and AC and it will be found that  $AB = 77$  cm. and  $AC = 61$  cm.

Hence the other sides of the triangular field are 77 metres and 61 metres long.

From A draw AD perpendicular to BC and measure it. It will be found that  $AD = 56$  cm. Hence the perpendicular from A to BC is 56 metres.

Q. E. F.

5. It is required to draw a chart of the whole course of a yacht (2 cm. to 1 knot) for 20 min., and then sailing at an average hour, which steers first N. E. N. W for 35 min., speed of 9 knots per



In 1 hr. the yacht steers 9 knots.

or, in 60 min the yacht steers 9 knots

$\therefore$  in 1 min. the yacht steers  $\frac{9}{60}$  knots

$\therefore$  in 20 min. the yacht steers  $\frac{9}{60} \times 20$ , or 3 knots

and in 35 min. the yacht steers  $\frac{9}{60} \times 35$ , or  $5\frac{1}{4}$  knots.

From any point A draw AB in N. E. direction making AB=6 cm From B draw BC in N W direction making BC=  $5\frac{1}{4}$  cm

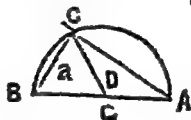
Then this graph represents the course of the yacht. Join AC and measure it. It will be found to be 12.08 cm.

Hence, the yacht is 6.04 knots from the harbour.

From C draw CD vertically downward. Measure the  $\angle ACD$  and it will be found to be  $15^\circ$ . Hence the yacht must set a course  $15^\circ$  E. of south for the run home.

Q. E. F.

6. It required to draw a triangle having given that the hypotenuse  $c=10.6$  cm and side  $a=5.6$  cm.



Take a straight line  $BA=c$  Bisect it at D (Prob 2).

With the centre D and radius DB or DA describe a semi-circle. With the centre B and radius  $a$ , draw an arc cutting the semi-circle at C Join AC and BC

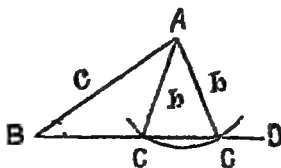
Then ABC is the required right-angled triangle, right-angled at C (Prob. 10)

Measure AC, and it will be found to be 9 cm. long.

$$\sqrt{c^2 - a^2} = \sqrt{(10.6)^2 - (5.6)^2} = \sqrt{81} = 9$$

$$\therefore b = \sqrt{c^2 - a^2}$$

7. It is required to construct a triangle having given the following parts —  $B=34^\circ$ ,  $b=5.5$  cm.,  $c=8.5$  cm.



Take a straight line  $BD$  of any length. At  $B$  make the  $\angle DBA=34^\circ$  making the arm  $BA=c$ .

With the centre  $A$  and radius equal to  $b$  draw an arc: this arc cuts  $BD$  at two points  $C'$  and  $C$ .

Join  $AC'$  and  $AC$ .

Hence there are two triangles  $ABC$  and  $ABC'$  satisfying the given condition.

Measure  $BC'$  and  $BC$ , and it will be found that  $BC'=4.3$  cm. and  $BC=9.8$  cm.

Thus the two values of  $a$  are 4.3 cm. and 9.8 cm.

Measure also the  $\angle^s ACB$  and  $AC'B$  and it will be found that the  $\angle ACB=60^\circ$  and the  $\angle AC'B=120^\circ$ . Thus the two values of  $C$  are  $60^\circ$  and  $120^\circ$ . Because  $60^\circ+120^\circ=180^\circ$ , hence the two values of  $C$  are supplementary.

Because  $AC=AC'$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ACC'=\text{the } \angle AC'C$  (Theor. 5)

But the  $\angle^s AC'B$  and  $AC'C$  together  $=2$  rt.  $\angle^s$  (Theor. 1)

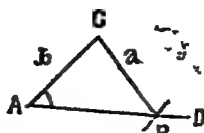
$\therefore$  the  $\angle^s AC'B$  and  $ACC'$  or  $ACB$  together  $=2$  rt.  $\angle^s$   
i.e. the  $\angle^s AC'B$  and  $ACB$  are supplementary.

Q E F.

8. It is required to construct a triangle  $ABC$  having given the angle  $A=50^\circ$ ,  $b=6.5$  cm. and  $a$ .

Take a straight line  $AD$  of any length. At  $A$  make the  $\angle DAC=50^\circ$  making  $AC=b$ .

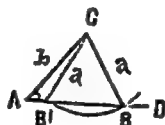
(i). When  $a=7$  cm.



With the centre  $C$  and radius  $=7$  cm. draw an arc cutting  $AD$  at  $B$ . This arc cuts  $AD$  at only one point. Join  $CB$

Then  $ABC$  is the required triangle.

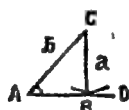
(ii). When  $a=6$  cm.



With the centre  $C$  and radius  $=6$  cm. draw an arc. This arc cuts  $AD$  at two points  $B$  and  $B'$ . Join  $CB$  and  $CB'$ .

Then  $ABC$  and  $AB'C$  are the required triangles, satisfying the given condition.

(iii). When  $a=5$  cm.

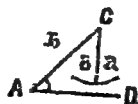


With the centre  $C$  and radius  $=5$  cm draw an arc. This arc touches  $AD$  at a point  $B$

Join  $BC$

Then  $ABC$  is the required triangle right-angled at  $B$ .

(iv). When  $a=4$  cm.

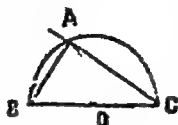


With the centre **C** and radius = 4 cm. draw an arc,

This arc does not cut nor touch the side **AD**,

Hence, no triangle exists with the given parts.

9 Let **AB**, **AC** be two straight rods crossing at right angles at **A**, and carried over a straight and **C**, such that the distance between the bridges is 461 yds, and the distance from the bridge **B** is 261 yds.



It is required to draw a plan and ascertain the distance from **A** to **C** by measurement.

Draw the plan in the scale of 1 cm. to 100 yds.

Take a straight line **BC** = 4.61 cm. and upon **BC** as diameter describe a semi-circle. With the centre **B** and radius = 2.61 cm draw an arc cutting the semi-circle at **A**. Join **CA** and **BA**.

Measure **AC** and it will be found 3.8 cm. long.

∴ The distance of **C** from **A** is 380 yds.

Q. E. F.

10. (see figure in Ex. 1 on page 19)

It is required to draw an isosceles triangle on a base of 4 cm. and having an altitude of 6.2 cm.

Construction—Take a straight line **BC** = 4 cm.

Bisect it at **D** (Prob. 2). At **D** draw **DA** perpendicular to **BC** making **DA** = 6.2 cm. Join **BA** and **CA**.

Then **ABC** is the required isosceles triangle.

Proof.—In the two  $\triangle^s$  **ABD** and **ACD**

Because  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{BD} = \text{DC (by construction)} \\ \text{DA is common to both} \\ \text{and the } \angle \text{ADB} = \text{the } \angle \text{ADC (being rt. } \angle^s) \end{array} \right.$

∴ two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

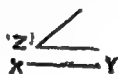
so that, **AB** = **AC**.



$\therefore ABC$  is an isosceles triangle, having the altitude  $AD = 6.2$  cm. and base  $BC = 4$  cm.

Measure  $AB$  and  $AC$ , and it will be found that each of them  $= 6.5$  cm

11 Let  $Z$  be the given angle and  $XY$  the given straight line. Q. E. F.



It is required to draw an isosceles triangle having its vertical angle equal to the given angle  $Z$  and the perpendicular from the vertex on the base equal to the given straight line  $XY$ .

**Construction.**—Construct an angle  $EAF = \text{the } \angle Z$ . Bisect the  $\angle EAF$  (Prob. 1) by  $AG$ . From  $AG$  cut off  $AD = XY$ . At  $D$  draw  $DB$  perpendicular to  $AG$  meeting  $AE$  in  $B$ . Produce  $BD$  to meet  $AF$  in  $C$ .

Then  $ABC$  is the required isosceles triangle.

**Proof**—In the two  $\triangle^s ABD$  and  $ACD$

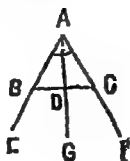
because  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the } \angle BAD = \text{the } \angle CAD \text{ (by construction)} \\ \text{the } \angle ADB = \text{the } \angle ADC \text{ (being rt } \angle^s) \\ \text{and } AD \text{ is common to both} \end{array} \right.$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 17)

so that,  $AB = AC$

$\therefore ABC$  is an isosceles triangle having the altitude  $AD = XY$ , and the vertical angle  $BAC = \angle Z$

(2) It is required to construct an equilateral triangle in which the perpendicular from one vertex on the opposite side is 6 cm.



We know that in an equilateral triangle all its sides are equal. Hence all its angles are equal. Therefore each of its angles  $= \frac{1}{3}$  of  $180^\circ = 60^\circ$ .

**Construction.**—Make an angle  $\angle EAF = 60^\circ$ .

Bisect the  $\angle EAF$  by  $AG$  (Prob. 1). From  $AG$  cut off  $AD = 5$  cm. At  $D$  draw  $DB$  perpendicular to  $AG$  meeting  $AE$  in  $B$ . Produce  $BD$  to meet  $AF$  in  $C$ .

**Proof.**—In the two  $\triangle^s ABD$  and  $ACD$

Because  $\begin{cases} \text{the } \angle BAD = \text{the } \angle CAD \text{ (by construction)} \\ \text{the } \angle ADB = \text{the } \angle ADC \text{ (being rt. } \angle^s) \\ \text{and } AD \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 17)

so that, the  $\angle ABD = \text{the } \angle ACD$

Now, the  $\angle BAC = 60^\circ$

$\therefore \angle ABC + \angle ACB = 180^\circ - 60^\circ = 120^\circ$

But the  $\angle ABC = \text{the } \angle ACB$  (proved)

$\therefore$  each of the  $\angle^s ABC$  and  $ACB = \frac{1}{2}$  of  $120^\circ = 60^\circ$

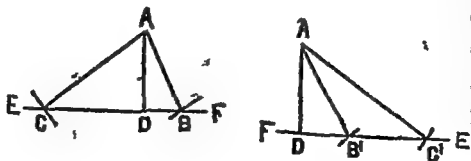
$\therefore$  the  $\angle ABC = \text{the } \angle ACB = \text{the } \angle BAC$

Hence the triangle  $ABC$  is equilateral (Theor. 6. Cor).

Measure a side and it will be found to be 6.9 cm. long.

Q. E. F.

12. It is required to construct a triangle  $ABC$  in which the perpendicular from  $A$  on  $BC$  is 5 cm., and the sides  $AB, AC$  are 5.8 cm. and 9 cm. respectively.



**Construction.**—Take a straight line  $EF$  of any length. At  $D$  any point in  $EF$  draw  $DA$  perpendicular to  $EF$  making  $DA = 5$  cm. With the centre  $A$  and radii  $= 9$  cm., and

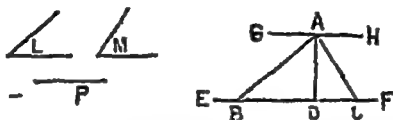
5.8 cm. draw two arcs cutting  $EF$  in the points  $B$  and  $C$  on opposite sides of  $AD$ , or in the points  $B'$  and  $C'$  on the same side of  $AD$

Then  $ABC$  and  $AB'C'$  are the two required triangles which satisfy the given conditions

Measure  $BC$  and  $B'C'$  and it will be found that  $BC = 10.4$  cm. and  $B'C' = 4.5$  cm.

Q. E. F.

13. Let  $L, M$  be the given angles and  $P$  the given line.



It is required to construct a triangle  $ABC$  having the angles at  $B$  and  $C$  equal to two given angles  $L$  and  $M$ , and the perpendicular from  $A$  on  $BC$  equal to the given line  $P$ .

**Construction**—Draw a straight line  $EF$  of any length. At  $D$  any point in  $EF$  draw  $DA$  perpendicular to  $EF$  making  $DA =$  the line  $P$ .

Through  $A$  draw  $GAH$  parallel to  $EF$ . At  $A$  make the  $\angle GAB =$  the  $\angle L$  the arm  $AB$  meeting  $EF$  in  $B$ . Also at  $A$  make the  $\angle HAC =$  the  $\angle M$  the arm  $AC$  meeting  $EF$  in  $C$ .

Then  $ABC$  is the required triangle.

**Proof**—Because  $GH$  and  $EF$  are parallel, and  $AB$  meets them

$$\therefore \text{the } \angle GAB = \text{the alternate } \angle ABC \text{ (Theor. 14)} \\ = \text{the } \angle L$$

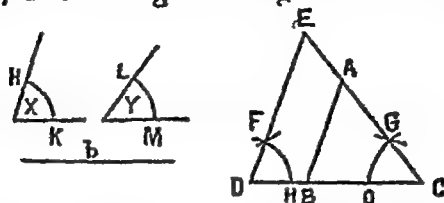
Again, because  $GH$  and  $EF$  are parallel, and  $AC$  meets them

$$\therefore \text{the } \angle HAC = \text{the alternate } \angle ACB \text{ (Theor. 14)} \\ = \text{the } \angle M$$

And the perpendicular  $AD$  = the given line  $P$  (by construction)

Q. E. F.

14. Let  $X, Y$  be the given angles and  $b$  the given side.



It is required to construct a triangle  $ABC$  having given two angles at  $B$  and  $C$  respectively equal to the angles  $X$  and  $Y$ , and the side  $b$ .

**Construction.**—With the vertex  $X$  of the  $\angle X$  as centre and any radius draw an arc cutting the arms of the angle at  $H$  and  $K$ . With the vertex  $Y$  of the  $\angle Y$  as centre and radius of any length draw an arc cutting the arms of the angle at  $L$  and  $M$ .

Take a straight line  $DC$  of any length. With the centre  $D$  and radius  $= XK$  or  $XL$  draw an arc cutting  $DC$  at  $H$ . With the centre  $H$  and radius  $= HK$  draw another arc cutting the former arc at  $F$ . Join  $DF$ . With the centre  $C$  and radius  $= YM$  or  $YL$  draw an arc cutting  $CD$  at  $O$ . With the centre  $O$  and radius  $= LM$  draw another arc cutting the former arc at  $G$ . Join  $CG$ .

Produce  $DF$  and  $CG$  to meet in  $E$ . From  $CE$  cut off  $CA = b$ . Through  $A$  draw  $AB$  parallel to  $DE$  meeting  $CD$  in  $B$ .

Then  $ABC$  is the required triangle.

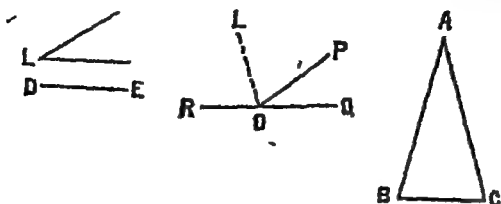
**Proof.**—Because  $AB$  and  $ED$  are parallel, and  $DC$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle EDC =$  the  $\angle ABC$  (Theor. 14)  
 $=$  the  $\angle X$

also, the  $\angle ACB =$  the  $\angle Y$ , and side  $AC = b$ .

Q. E. F.

15 Let  $L$  be the given angle and  $DE$  the given side.



It is required to construct an isosceles triangle having its vertical angle equal to the given angle  $L$  and its base equal to  $DE$ .

**Construction** — Make an angle  $POQ = \angle L$ . Produce one of the arms  $QO$  of the angle to any point  $R$ , then the  $\angle POR$  is supplement of the  $\angle POQ$ . Bisect the  $\angle POR$  by  $OL$ , then each of the  $\angle^s POL, LOQ$  is half the supplement of the  $\angle POQ$ .

Take a straight line  $BC = DE$ . At the points  $B$  and  $C$  make the  $\angle^s CBA, BCA$  each equal to the  $\angle LOR$  or  $\angle POL$  the arms  $BA$  and  $CA$  meeting at  $A$ .

Then  $ABC$  is the required isosceles triangle.

**Proof.**—The  $\angle CBA = \angle BCA$  (by construction)

$\therefore AB = AC$  (Theor. 6)

$\therefore ABC$  is an isosceles triangle.

Again, the vertical  $\angle BAC$

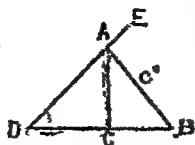
$=$  the supplement of the  $\angle^s ABC + ACB$

$=$  the supplement of the  $\angle^s POL + LOR$

$=$  the  $\angle POQ$

And the base  $BC = DE$ .

16. It is required to construct a right angled triangle having given the hypotenuse  $c=5.3$  cm, and the sum of the remaining two sides  $a$  and  $b=7.3$  cm.



**Construction.**—Take a straight line  $DB=7.3$  cm. At  $D$  make the  $\angle BDE = \text{half rt. angle or } 45^\circ$ .

With the centre  $B$  and radius  $=5.3$  cm. draw an arc cutting  $DE$  at  $A$ . From  $A$  draw  $AC$  perpendicular to  $DB$ .

Join  $AB$

Then  $ABC$  is the required right-angle triangle.

**Proof.**—Because the  $\angle ACD$  is a rt  $\angle$ , and the  $\angle EDB$  or  $\angle ADC = \text{half rt } \angle \text{ or } 45^\circ$ .

$\therefore$  the  $\angle DAC$  also  $= \text{half rt. } \angle \text{ or } 45^\circ$  (Theor. 16 Inf 3)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ADC = \text{the } \angle DAC$

$\therefore DC = AC$  (Theor 6)

$\therefore AC + BC = DC + BC = DB = 7.3$  cm.

also the hypotenuse  $AB = 5.3$  cm. (by construction).

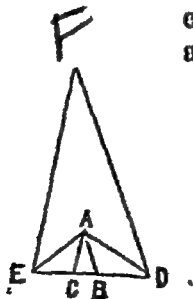
Measure  $AC$  and  $BC$ , and it will be found  $AC = b = 4.5$  cm. and  $BC = a = 2.8$  cm.

$$\therefore \sqrt{a^2 + b^2} = \sqrt{(2.8)^2 + (4.5)^2} = \sqrt{28.09} = 5.3$$

$$\therefore c = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$$

Q. E. F.

17. It is required to construct a triangle having given its perimeter  $a+b+c=12$  cm, and the angles at the base equal to  $70^\circ$  and  $80^\circ$  respectively.



**Construction**—Take a straight line  $ED=12$  cm. At  $D$  make an angle  $EDF=70^\circ$ , and at  $E$  make an angle  $DEF=80^\circ$ , the two arms  $EF$  and  $DF$  meeting in  $F$

Bisect the  $\angle EDF$  by  $DA$  and the  $\angle DEF$  by  $EA$ , the two bisectors  $DA$  and  $EA$  meeting in  $A$

From  $A$  draw  $AB$  parallel to  $FD$  and  $AC$  parallel to  $FE$ , the lines  $AB$  and  $AC$  meeting  $ED$  in  $B$  and  $C$ .

Then  $ABC$  is the required triangle.

**Proof.**—Because  $FE$  and  $AC$  are parallel, and  $AE$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle AEF =$  the alternate  $\angle EAC$  (Theor. 14)

But the  $\angle AEF =$  the  $\angle AEC$  (by construction)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle EAC =$  the  $\angle AEC$

$\therefore AC = EC$  (Theor. 6)

Again, because  $AB$  and  $FD$  are parallel, and  $AD$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ADF =$  the alternate  $\angle DAB$  (Theor. 14)

But the  $\angle ADF =$  the  $\angle ADB$  (by construction)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle DAB =$  the  $\angle ADB$

$\therefore AB = BD$  (Theor. 6)

$\therefore AC + BC + BA = EC + CB + BD = ED = 12$  cm.

Again, because  $AC$  and  $FE$  are parallel, and  $ED$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle FED =$  the  $\angle ACD$  (Theor. 14)

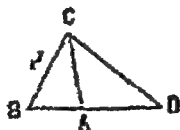
or, the  $\angle ACB = 80^\circ$

And, because  $AB$  and  $FD$  are parallel, and  $DE$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle FDE =$  the  $\angle ABE$  (Theor. 14)

or, the  $\angle ABC = 70^\circ$ .

18. It is required to construct a triangle ABC in which  $a = 6.5$  cm,  $b + c = 10$  cm, and  $B = 60^\circ$ .



**Construction.**—Take a straight line  $DB = 10$  cm. At B make an angle  $DBC = 60^\circ$  making  $BC = 6.5$  cm. Join DC.

At C make the  $\angle DCA = \angle CDA$  the arm CA meeting BD in A.

Then ABC is the required triangle.

**Proof.**—Because the  $\angle ACD = \angle ADC$  (by construction)

$$\therefore AC = AD \quad (\text{Theor. 6})$$

$$\therefore AC + AB = DA + AB = DB = 10 \text{ cm.}$$

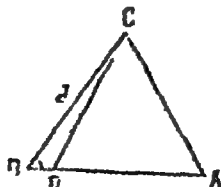
also  $BC = 6.5$  cm., and the  $\angle ABC = 60^\circ$ .

Measure AB or c and AC or b, and it will be found that  $AB = 4.2$  cm. and  $AC = 5.8$  cm.

$$\therefore b + c = (5.8 + 4.2) \text{ cm} = 10 \text{ cm.}$$

Q. E. F.

19. It is required to construct a triangle ABC in which  $a = 7$  cm.,  $c - b = 1$  cm., and  $B = 55^\circ$ .



**Construction.**—Take a straight line  $BD = 1$  cm. At B make an angle  $DBC = 55^\circ$  making  $BC = 7$  cm.

Join DC. Produce BD to any point A.



At C make the angle  $\angle DCA = \angle ADC$ , the arm CA meeting BD produced in A

Then ABC is the required triangle

Proof.—Because the  $\angle ADC = \angle ACD$  (by construction)

$\therefore AD = AC$  (Theor 6)

$\therefore BA - CA = BA - DA = BD = 1 \text{ cm}$

also  $BC = 7 \text{ cm.}$ , and the  $\angle ABC = 55^\circ$

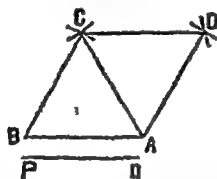
Measure AB or c and AC or b, and it will be found that  $AB = 6 \text{ cm}$  and  $AC = 7 \text{ cm}$ .

$\therefore c - b = 8 \text{ cm.} - 7 \text{ cm.} = 1 \text{ cm.}$

Q. E. F.

Page 89.

1. Let PQ be a given straight line.



It is required to draw a rhombus each of whose sides is equal to the given straight line PQ, which is also to be one diagonal of the figure.

Construction.—Take a straight line  $BA = PQ$ .

With the centres B and A, and radius  $= BA$  draw two arcs cutting at C.

Join BC and CA. With the centres C and A, and radius  $= BA$  draw two arcs cutting at D on the side of CA opposite to B.

Join CD and AD.

Then ABCD is the required rhombus each of whose sides is equal to PQ, also one diagonal CA is equal to PQ.

In the  $\triangle ABC$ , because  $BA=BC=CA$  (by construction)

$\therefore ABC$  is an equilateral triangle

$\therefore$  each of its angles  $BAC, ACB, ABC=60^\circ$ .

Similarly, in the  $\triangle ADC$ , because  $CA=AD=CD$  (by construction)

$\therefore ADC$  is an equilateral triangle

$\therefore$  each of its angles  $ADC, ACD, DAC=60^\circ$ .

$\therefore$  the  $\angle BCD = \angle ACB + \angle ACD = 60^\circ + 60^\circ = 120^\circ$

Similarly, the  $\angle BAD = \angle BAC + \angle DAC = 60^\circ + 60^\circ = 120^\circ$ .

The  $\angle ABC=60^\circ$ , also the  $\angle ADC=60^\circ$ .

Q. E. F.

2. (See figure in Ex. 3 on page 19)

It is required to draw a square on a side of 2.5 inches and to prove theoretically that its diagonals are equal.

Construction.—Take a straight line  $DC=2.5''$ .

At D and C draw  $DA$  and  $CB$  perpendiculars to  $DC$  making each of them equal to 2.5''

Join  $AB$

Then  $ABCD$  is the required square.

Join  $AC$  and  $BD$ .

Then in the two  $\triangle^s ADC$  and  $BCD$

Because  $\begin{cases} AD=BC \text{ (by construction)} \\ DC \text{ is common to both} \\ \text{and the } \angle ADC = \text{the } \angle BCD \text{ (being rt. } \angle^s) \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

so that,  $AC=BD$

Measure  $AC$  and  $BD$ , and it will be found that each of them  $=3.54''$ .

Q. E. F.

3 It is required to construct a square on a diagonal of  $3''$ .



**Construction** — Take a straight line  $AC = 3''$ .

Bisect it at E (Prob. 2) A E draw ED perpendicular to AC making  $ED = \frac{1}{2} AC = 1.5''$ . Produce DE beyond E to B making  $EB = ED$ .

Join AB BC CD and DA.

Then ABCD is the required square.

Measure the sides, and it will be found that each of them is equal to  $2.12''$

The average result =  $2.12''$

Q. E. F.

4. (See figure in Ex. 3 on page 59)

It is required to draw a parallelogram ABCD, having given that one side  $AB = 5.5$  cm., and the diagonals AC, BD are 8 cm. and 6 cm. respectively.

We know that the diagonals of a parallelogram bisect one another (Th or. 21 Cor. 3)

**Construction.**—Take a straight line  $AB = 5.5$  cm.

With the centre A and radius =  $\frac{1}{2} AC$  or 4 cm. draw an arc. With the centre B and radius =  $\frac{1}{2} BD$  or 3 cm draw another arc cutting the former arc at O

Join AO and BO Produce AO beyond O to C making  $OC = AO = 4$  cm. Also produce BO beyond O to D making  $OD = BO = 3$  cm.

Join AD DC and BC.

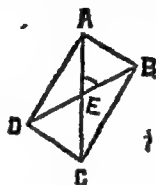
$\therefore AC = 8$  cm. and  $BD = 6$  cm., and they bisect one another at O.

Hence ABCD is the required parallelogram.

Measure AD and it will be found that  $AD = 4.4$  cm.

Q. E. F.

5. It is required to construct a quadrilateral whose diagonals are equal (each 6 cm.) and these diagonals bisect one another at an angle of  $60^\circ$ , to name its species and give a formal proof.



**Construction** — Make an angle  $\angle AEB = 60^\circ$ , making the arms  $EB, EA$  each equal to 3 cm.

Produce  $AE$  beyond  $E$  to  $C$  making  $EC = AE$ .

Also produce  $BE$  beyond  $E$  to  $D$  making  $ED = BE$ .

Join  $AD, DC, CB$  and  $BA$

Then  $ABCD$  is the required quadrilateral.

This quadrilateral is rectangle.

**Proof**—In the  $\triangle^s AEB$  and  $DEC$

Because  $\begin{cases} AE = EC \text{ (by construction)} \\ BE = ED \text{ (by construction)} \\ \text{and the } \angle AEB = \text{the } \angle DEC \text{ (Theor. 3)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

so that,  $AB = DC$  and the  $\angle BAE = \text{the } \angle DCE$

But the  $\angle^s BAC$  and  $DCA$  are alternate angles

$\therefore AB$  and  $DC$  are parallel (Theor. 13)

$\therefore AD$  and  $BC$  are equal and parallel. (Theor. 20)

$\therefore$  the figure  $ABCD$  is a parallelogram

In the two  $\triangle^s ABC$  and  $DCB$

Because  $\begin{cases} AB = DC \text{ (proved)} \\ AC = DB \text{ (given)} \\ \text{and } BC \text{ is common to both} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects, (Theor. 7)

so that, the  $\angle ABC = \angle DCB$

But the  $\angle^s ABC + DCB = 2 \text{ rt. } \angle^s$  (Theor. 14)

$\therefore$  each of the  $\angle^s ABC$  and  $DCB = \frac{1}{2}$  of  $2 \text{ rt. } \angle^s = 1 \text{ rt. } \angle$

$\therefore$  The parallelogram  $ABCD$  is a rectangle.

Q. E. F.

It is required to show that *five* independent data are here given.

Five independent data given in this problem are —

- (1) length of  $AC$ , (2) length of  $BD$ , (3)  $AC$  bisects  $BD$ ,
- (4)  $BD$  bisects  $AC$ , and (5)  $AC, BD$  cut at an angle of  $60^\circ$ .

Measure  $AB, BC$ , and it will be found that  $AB = 3 \text{ cm.}$ ,  
and  $BC = 5.2 \text{ cm.}$

Hence the perimeter  $= AB + BC + CD + DA$

$$= (3 + 5.2 + 3 + 5.2) \text{ cm.}$$

$$= 16.4 \text{ cm.}$$

It is required to find the increase per cent in the perimeter of the quadrilateral if the angle between the diagonals were increased to  $90^\circ$ .

If the angle between the diagonals were increased to  $90^\circ$ , the figure would be a square, as shown in the figure of Ex. 3.

Measure each side of the square, and it will be found that it is equal to  $4.24 \text{ cm.}$

$\therefore$  the perimeter  $= 16.96 \text{ cm.}$

$\therefore$  increase in perimeter  $= (16.96 - 16.4) \text{ cm.} = 56 \text{ cm.}$

$\therefore$  increase per cent. in the perimeter  $= \frac{.56}{16.4} \times 100 = 3.4$

nearly

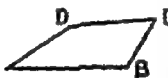
6. In a quadrilateral ABCD it is given that  $AB = 5.6$  cm,  $BC = 2.5$  cm,  $CD = 4$  cm, and  $DA = 3.3$  cm.

It is required to show that the shape of the quadrilateral is not settled by these data.

Because five independent data are necessary to construct a quadrilateral, and here are given only four, therefore the shape of the quadrilateral will not be settled unless one more is given.

(i) It is required to draw the quadrilateral when  $\angle A = 30^\circ$

**Construction**—Make an angle  $DAB = 30^\circ$ , making the arms AB and AD, respectively equal to 5.6 cm. and 3.3 cm. With the centre D and radius  $= 4$  cm draw an arc. With the centre B and radius  $= 2.5$  cm. draw another arc cutting the former arc at C.



Join DC and BC.

Then ABCD is the required quadrilateral.

(ii) It is required to draw the quadrilateral when  $\angle A = 60^\circ$

**Construction**—Make an angle  $BAD = 60^\circ$ , making the arms AB, AD respectively equal to 5.6 cm. and 3.3 cm. With the centre B and radius  $= 2.5$  cm draw an arc. With the centre D and radius  $= 4$  cm. draw another arc cutting the former arc at C.



Join BC and DC.

Then ABCD is the required quadrilateral.

It is required to show why does the construction fail when the  $\angle A = 100^\circ$ .

If the  $\angle A$  were made  $100^\circ$ , then the arcs drawn with centres B, D, and radii equal to 2.5 cm. and 4 cm., will not cut one another, because BD is, in this case, greater than  $(4+2.5)$  cm., or 6.5 cm. Hence the construction fails, as shown in the figure and no quadrilateral exists.

It is required to determine the least value of the  $\angle A$  for which the construction fails.

The least value of the  $\angle A$  for which the construction fails is one in which the two arcs, drawn with centres B and D, and radii equal to 2.5 cm. and 4 cm., just touch one another, that is, when  $BD = (4+2.5)$  cm., or 6.5 cm.

This is the case when the  $\angle A = 90^\circ$ , as shown in the figure.

7 It is required to explain the method of constructing a quadrilateral, having given the lengths of the four sides and that of one diagonal.

In order to construct such a quadrilateral, take a line equal to its diagonal, and on the opposite sides of this line describe two triangles whose sides are equal to the two pair of adjacent sides of the quadrilateral which meet at the angular points through which the diagonal does not pass (according to the method explained in Prob 8)

It is required to find the conditions that must hold among the given data in order that the problem may be possible.

In order that the problem may be possible, each of these pairs of adjacent sides must be together greater than the given diagonal.

(1) It is required to construct a quadrilateral when  $AB=3''$ ,  $BC=1.7''$ ,  $CD=2.5''$ ,  $DA=2.8''$ , and the diagonal,  $BD=2.6''$ .



**Construction.**—Take a straight line  $BD = 2.6''$

With the centre B and radius  $= 1.7''$  draw an arc. With the centre D and radius  $= 2.5''$  draw another arc cutting the former arc at C.

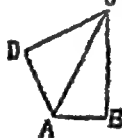
Again with the centre B and radius  $= 3''$  draw an arc on the side of BD opposite to C. With the centre D and radius  $= 2.8''$  draw another arc cutting the former arc at A.

Join AB, BC, CD and DA.

Then ABCD is the required quadrilateral.

Join AC and measure it. It will be found that  $AC = 4.25''$ .

(ii) It is required to construct a quadrilateral when  $AB = 3.6$  cm,  $BC = 7.7$  cm,  $CD = 6.8$  cm,  $DA = 5.1$  cm, and the diagonal  $AC = 8.5$  cm.



**Construction.**—Take a straight line  $AC = 8.5$  cm.

With the centre A and radius  $= 3.6$  cm. draw an arc. With the centre C and radius  $= 7.7$  cm. draw another arc cutting the former arc at B.

Again with the centre A and radius  $= 5.1$  cm. draw an arc on the side of AC opposite to B. With the centre C and radius  $= 6.8$  cm. draw another arc cutting the former arc at D.

Join AB, BC, CD and DA.

Then ABCD is the required quadrilateral.

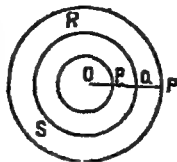
Measure the angles B and D. and it will be found that the  $\angle B = 90^\circ$  and the  $\angle D = 90^\circ$ .

Q. E. F.



## Pages 94 and 95.

1. Let  $QRS$  be a given circle whose centre is  $O$ , and let  $P$  be a given point which moves so that its distance (measured radially) from the circumference of the circle  $QRS$  is constant.



It is required to find the locus of the point  $P$ .

Join  $OP$ , and let it cut the given circle at  $Q$ .

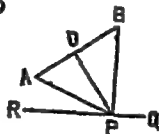
Then since the circle is given, its radius  $OQ$  is of constant length. Also  $QP$  is of constant length (given)

$\therefore (OQ + QP)$  and  $(OQ - QP)$  are also constants

Hence the locus of  $P$  is a pair of concentric circles whose radii are  $(OQ + QP)$  or  $OP$  and  $(OQ - QP)$  or  $OP'$  as shown in the figure

Q. E. F.

2. Let a point  $P$  move along a straight line  $RQ$ , and let  $A$  and  $B$  be any two given points.



It is required to find the position in which  $P$  is equidistant from  $A$  and  $B$

Join  $AB$  and bisect it at  $O$ . At  $O$  draw  $OP$  perpendicular to  $AB$  meeting  $RQ$  in  $P$ .

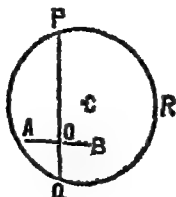
Join  $AP$  and  $BP$ .

Locus of the points equidistant from  $A$  and  $B$  is the straight line  $OP$  which bisects  $AB$  at right angles (Prob. 14)

Hence the point common to  $OP$  and  $RQ$  must satisfy both the conditions, that is, the point  $P$ , where  $OP$  intersects  $RQ$ , lies on  $RQ$  and is equidistant from  $A$  and  $B$

Q. E. F.

3. Let  $PQR$  be a circle whose centre is  $C$ , and let  $A$  and  $B$  be two fixed points within the circle.



It is required to find points on the circumference of the circle  $PQR$  equidistant from  $A$  and  $B$ .

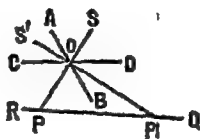
Join  $AB$  and bisect it at  $O$ . At  $O$  draw  $OP$  perpendicular to  $AB$  meeting the circumference of the circle  $PQR$  in  $P$ . Produce  $PO$  beyond  $O$  to  $Q$  meeting the circumference of the same circle in  $Q$ .

Locus of the points equidistant from  $A$  and  $B$  is the straight line  $PQQ$  which bisects  $AB$  at right angles (Prob. 14)

Hence the points common to the circle  $PQR$  and the straight line  $PQ$  must satisfy both the conditions, that is,  $P$  and  $Q$ , the points of intersection of  $OP$  and  $OQ$  and the circle  $PQR$ , lie on the circumference of the circle and are equidistant from  $A$  and  $B$ .

Q. E. F.

4. Let a point  $P$  move along a straight line  $RQ$ , and let  $AB$ ,  $CD$  be two other given straight lines.



It is required to find the position of  $P$  which is equidistant from  $AB$  and  $CD$ .

Let  $AB$ ,  $CD$  cut one another at  $O$ .

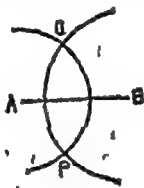
Bisect the  $\angle BOC$  by  $OP$  meeting  $RQ$  in  $P$ . Produce  $PO$  beyond  $O$  to any point  $S$ . Bisect the  $\angle BOD$  by  $OP'$  meeting  $RQ$  in  $P'$ . Produce  $P'O$  beyond  $O$  to any point  $S'$ .

Locus of the points equidistant from  $AB$  and  $CD$  is the pair of lines  $SP, S'P'$  bisecting the angles between  $AB$  and  $CD$  (Prob. 15)

Hence the points common to this pair of lines and the given straight line  $RQ$  must satisfy both the conditions; that is  $P, P'$ , the points of intersection of the pair of lines  $SP, S'P'$ , and the straight line  $RQ$ , lie on the straight line  $RQ$  and are equidistant from  $AB$  and  $CD$

Q. E. F

5. Let  $A$  and  $B$  be two fixed points 6 cm. apart.



It is required to find two points which are 4 cm distant from  $A$ , and 5 cm from  $B$

With the centre  $A$  and radius = 4 cm describe a circle. With the centre  $B$  and radius = 5 cm. describe another circle cutting the former circle at  $P$  and  $Q$

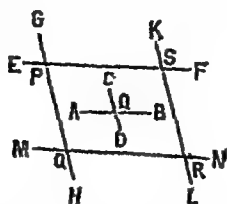
Locus of the points 4 cm distant from  $A$  is the circumference of a circle whose centre is  $A$  and radius = 4 cm.

Locus of the points 5 cm distant from  $B$  is the circumference of a circle whose centre is  $B$  and radius = 5 cm

Hence the points common to the two circles drawn with the centres  $A, B$ , and radii 4 cm., and 5 cm. respectively, must satisfy both the conditions, that is,  $P, Q$ , the points of intersection of two circles, will each be 4 cm. distant from  $A$ , and 5 cm. distant from  $B$ .

Q. E. F.

6. Let  $AB$ ,  $CD$  be two given straight lines.



It is required to find points 3 cm. distant from  $AB$ , and 4 cm. from  $CD$ .

Let  $AB$ ,  $CD$  cut one another at  $O$ . Draw  $EF$  and  $MN$  parallels to  $AB$ , each at a distance of 3 cm. from  $AB$ . Draw  $GH$  and  $KL$  parallels to  $CD$ , each at a distance of 4 cm. from  $CD$ , cutting  $EF$  at  $P$  and  $S$ , and  $MN$  at  $Q$  and  $R$ .

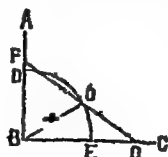
Locus of the points 3 cm. distant from  $AB$  is the pair of straight lines  $EF$  and  $MN$  drawn parallel to  $AB$  on either side of it, and at a distance of 3 cm. from it.

Locus of the points 4 cm. distant from  $CD$  is the pair of straight lines  $GH$  and  $KL$  drawn parallel to  $CD$  on either side of it, and at a distance of 4 cm. from it.

Hence the points common to the two pair of straight lines must satisfy both the conditions; that is,  $P$ ,  $Q$ ,  $R$ ,  $S$ , the points of intersection of the two pair of straight lines, will each be 3 cm. distant from  $AB$  and 4 cm. distant from  $CD$ .

Q. E. F.

7. Let  $AB$ ,  $BC$  be two straight rulers placed at right angles to one another and let  $PQ$  be one position of the straight rod of given length which slides between them.



It is required to plot the locus of the middle point of  $PQ$ , and to show that this locus is a fourth part of the circumference of a circle.

Bisect  $PQ$  at  $O$ . Join  $BO$ . With the centre  $B$  and radius  $BO$  draw an arc cutting  $AB$  in  $D$  and  $BC$  in  $E$ .

$BO = \frac{1}{2} PQ$  (proved in Ex 10 on page 47)

$=$  constant ( $\because$  the straight rod is of given length)

$\therefore$  the distance of  $O$  from  $B$  is always constant. But  $B$  is a fixed point, therefore the locus of  $O$ , the middle point of  $PQ$ , is a circle whose centre is  $B$  and radius  $= \frac{1}{2} PQ$ .

Because the rod  $PQ$  slides between the rulers  $AB$  and  $BC$ , therefore its middle point  $O$  will never go beyond them. Hence the arc  $DOE$  is the required locus

In a circle a radius starting from any position in any direction moves through 4 rt  $\angle$ s about the centre to come back to its original position (from which it started).

Now 1 rt. angle is a fourth part of 4 rt angles

$\therefore$  the arc  $DOE$  subtended by the rt  $\angle$   $DBE$  is a fourth part of the circumference of the circle drawn with centre  $B$  and radius  $BO$ .

Hence the required locus is the arc,  $DOE$  which is a fourth part of the circumference of a circle.

Q. E. F

8. Let  $APB$  be a right-angled triangle described on the given base  $AB$  as a hypotenuse.



It is required to find the locus of its vertex  $P$ .

Bisect  $AB$  at  $O$ , and join  $PO$ .

Then  $PO = \frac{1}{2} AB$  (proved in Ex 10 on page 47)

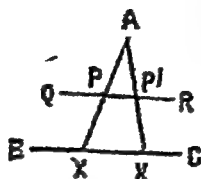
Because  $AB$  is given, hence its middle point  $O$  is a fixed point.

$\therefore$  the locus of  $P$  is a circle whose centre is  $O$  and radius  $= \frac{1}{2} AB$ .

$\therefore$  the locus of vertices of right angled triangles described on the given base  $AB$  as a hypotenuse is a circle on  $AB$  as diameter.

Q. E. F.

9. Let  $A$  be a fixed point, and  $BC$  a fixed straight line on which a point  $X$  moves.



It is required to plot the locus of  $P$ , the middle point of  $AX$ , and prove that the locus is a straight line parallel to  $BC$ .

Let  $X, X'$  be any two positions of  $X$ . Join  $AX$  and  $AX'$

Bisect  $AX$  at  $P$  and  $AX'$  at  $P'$ . Join  $PP'$  and produce it beyond both ends to points  $Q$  and  $R$

Because  $P$  and  $P'$  are the middle points of  $AX$  and  $AX'$

$\therefore$  the straight line  $PP'$  is parallel to  $XX'$  or  $BC$  (proved in Ex. 2 on page 64)

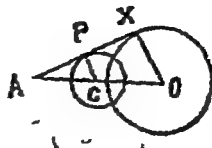
If any point in  $BC$  representing the position of  $X$  be joined to  $A$ , then this straight line will be bisected by  $YR$  or  $PP'$  (proved in Ex. 5 on page 64)

Thus it is evident that every straight line drawn from  $A$  and terminated by  $BC$  is bisected by  $QR$  which is parallel to  $BC$

$\therefore QR$  is the required locus and it is parallel to  $BC$ .

Q. E. F.

10. Let  $A$  be a fixed point, and  $O$  the centre of a given circle on the circumference of which the point  $X$  moves,



It is required to plot the locus of P, the middle of AX, and to prove that this locus is a circle.

Join AO and bisect it at C.

Let X denote any position of the moving point on the circumference of the given circle.

Join OX and AX. Bisect AX at P. Join CP.

Because P and C are the middle points of AX and AO.

$\therefore$  PC is  $\frac{1}{2}$  of OX (proved in Ex. 3 on page 64)

Because O and A are fixed points, hence C the middle point of AO is also a fixed point.

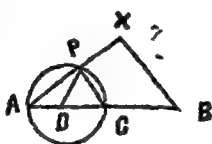
Again, because the circle with centre O is given, therefore the radius OX is of constant length.

$\therefore \frac{1}{2}$  OX or CP is also of constant length.

$\therefore$  the locus of P, the middle point of AX, is a circle whose centre is C and radius  $= \frac{1}{2}$  OX.

Q. E. F.

11. Let AB be a given straight line, and let AX be a perpendicular drawn from A to any straight line BX passing through B.



If BX revolve about B, it is required to find the locus of the middle point of AX.

Bisect AX at P and AB at C.

Join PC. Then PC is parallel to BX (proved in Ex. 2 on page 64)

Since BX and PC are parallel, and AX meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle AXB = \text{the } \angle APC$  (Theor. 14)

But the  $\angle AXB = 90^\circ$  (given)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle APC$  is  $90^\circ$ .

$\therefore$  the circle described on the diameter  $AC$  will pass through  $P$  (Prob. 10, also proved in Ex 8)

Because  $AB$  is a fixed straight line and  $C$  is its middle point, therefore  $AC$  is of constant length

$\therefore$  the circle described on the diameter  $AC$  is a fixed circle.

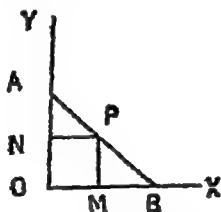
And because  $P$ , the middle point of  $AX$ , lies on this circle,

$\therefore$  the locus of  $P$  is the circumference of this circle.

Q. E. F.

12 Let  $OX$  and  $OY$  be two straight lines cutting at right angles at  $O$ , and let  $P$  be a point within the angle  $XOY$  from which perpendiculars  $PM$ ,  $PN$  are drawn to  $OX$ ,  $OY$  respectively.

(i). It is required to plot the locus of  $P$  when  $PM + PN = 6$  cm.



To find a position of  $P$  measure off along  $OX$  a length  $OM$  less than 6 cm. At  $M$  draw  $MP$  perpendicular to  $OX$  and equal to the difference between 6 cm. and  $OM$ . From  $P$  draw  $PN$  perpendicular to  $OY$ .

Then  $PM + PN = PM + OM = 6$  cm.

Here the point  $P$  moves through all positions in which  $PM + PN = 6$  cm.; hence one position of the moving point  $P$  is at the point  $B$  in  $OX$ , such that  $OB = 6$  cm. In this case  $PM = 0$  zero and  $PN$  coincides with  $BO$ .

Let  $P$  be any other position of the moving point. Draw  $PM$ ,  $PN$  perpendiculars to  $OX$ ,  $OY$  respectively.



Then  $PM + PN = 6$  cm.

Because  $PN = OM$  (Theor. 21)

$$\therefore PM + PN = PM + OM = 6 \text{ cm}$$

Join BP and produce it to meet OY in A.

Because  $OB = OM + MB = 6$  cm.

and  $OM + PM = 6$  cm.

$$\therefore OM + MB = OM + PM$$

$$\therefore MB = PM$$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle MBP =$  the  $\angle MPB$  (Theor. 5)

Again because the  $\angle PMB$  is a rt.  $\angle$ , therefore each of the  $\angle^s$  MBP and MPB is half a rt. angle (Theor. 16 Inf 3)

Thus B being a fixed point, and  $\angle MBP$  a constant angle, the line BP is known in position

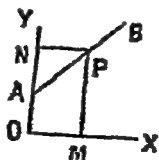
$\therefore$  Every point P which moves as given above, lies on the straight line BP which passes through the point B and makes with OX an angle equal to half a right angle.

But since the point P remains within the  $\angle XOY$ , therefore the line AB between the given lines OX, OY is the required locus.

Q. E. F.

(22) It is required to plot the locus of P when  $PM - PN = 3$  cm.

Here the point P moves through all positions in which  $PM - PN = 3$  cm., hence one position of the moving point P is at the point A in OY, such that  $OA = 3$  cm and MP coincides with OA. In this case  $PN = 0$  zero with OA.



Let P be any other position of the moving point.

Draw PM, PN perpendiculars to OX, OY respectively.

Then  $PM - PN = 3$  cm.

Join  $AP$  and produce it beyond  $P$  to any point  $B$ .

Because  $OA = ON - NA = 3$  cm.

and  $PM - PN = 3$  cm.

$\therefore ON - NA = PM - PN$

But  $ON = PM$ . (Theor. 21)

$\therefore NA = PN$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle NAP =$  the  $\angle NPA$  (Theor. 5)

Again because the  $\angle ANP$  is a right angle, therefore each of the  $\angle^s NAP$  and  $NPA$  is half a rt. angle. (Theor. 16 Inf. 3)

Thus  $A$  being a fixed a point, and  $\angle NAP$  a constant angle, the line  $AP$  is known in position.

$\therefore$  every point  $P$  which moves as given above, lies on the straight line  $AP$  which passes through the point  $A$  and makes with  $OY$  an angle equal to half a rt. angle.

$\therefore$  the line  $AB$  is the required locus.

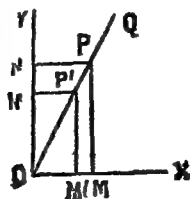
Thus the locus of  $P$  is the straight line  $AB$  lying between the given straight lines  $OX$ ,  $OY$  and making with  $OY$  an angle equal to half a right angle.

Q. E. F.

13. Let two straight lines  $OX$ ,  $OY$  intersect at right angles at  $O$  and let  $P$  be the moving point from which perpendiculars  $PM$ ,  $PN$  are drawn to  $OX$ ,  $OY$ .

(\*) It is required to plot (without proof) the locus of  $P$ , when  $PM = 2 PN$ .

Take any point  $M'$  in  $OX$ . From  $OY$  cut off  $ON' = 2 \cdot OM'$ . At  $M'$  draw  $OX$ . At  $N'$  draw  $OY$ , meeting  $M'P'$   $M'P'$  perpendicular to  $N'P'$  perpendicular to in  $P'$ .



Take another point  $M$  in  $OX$ . From  $OY$  cut off  $ON = 2 OM$ .

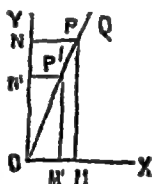
At  $M$  draw  $MP$  perpendicular to  $OX$ . At  $N$  draw  $NP$  perpendicular to  $OY$ , meeting  $MP$  in  $P$ . Join  $P'P$  and produce it to any point  $Q$ .

Then the line  $PP'$  is the required locus.

It should be noticed that this locus passes through  $O$ .

Q. E. F

(ii) It is required to plot (without proof) the locus of  $P$  when  $PM = 3 PN$ .



Take any point  $M'$  in  $OX$ . From  $OY$  cut off  $ON' = 3 OM'$ . At  $M', N'$  draw  $M'P', N'P'$  perpendiculars to  $OX, OY$  respectively, the lines meeting in  $P'$ .

Take another point  $M$  in  $OX$ . From  $OY$  cut off  $ON = 3 OM$ . At  $M, N$  draw  $MP, NP$  perpendiculars to  $OX, OY$  respectively, the lines meeting in  $P$ .

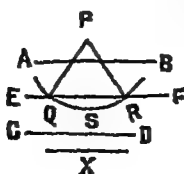
Join  $P'P$  and produce it to any point  $Q$ .

Then the line  $PP'$  is the required locus.

It should be noticed that this locus passes through  $O$ .

Q. E. F

14. Let  $AB, CD$  be two given parallel straight lines,  $X$  a given line, and  $P$  a given point.



It is required to find a point which is at a given distance  $X$  from  $P$ , and is equidistant from two given parallel straight lines  $AB, CD$

Locus of the points equidistant from  $AB$  and  $CD$  is the straight line  $EF$  parallel to  $AB$  or  $CD$ , and midway between them.

Locus of the points which are at a given distance  $X$  from  $P$  is the circumference of a circle  $QR$  whose centre is  $P$  and radius equal to the given distance  $X$ .

Hence the points common to the circle  $QR$  and the straight line  $EF$  must satisfy both the conditions: that is,  $Q, R$  the points of intersection of the circle  $QR$  and the straight line  $EF$  are equidistant from  $AB$  and  $CD$ , and are at the given distance  $X$  from  $P$ .

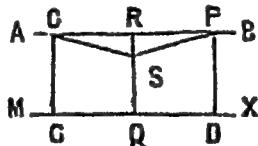
Q E. F.

This problem admits of two solutions when the given distance  $X$  is greater than the perpendicular from  $P$  to  $EF$ .

This problem admits of only one solution when the given distance  $X$  is equal to the distance of  $P$  from the straight line  $EF$ .

This problem is impossible when the given distance  $X$  is less than the distance of  $P$  from the straight line  $EF$ .

15. Let  $MX$  be a given straight line, and let  $S$  be a fixed point  $2''$  distant from it.



It is required to find two points which are  $2\frac{3}{4}''$  distant from  $S$ , and also  $2\frac{3}{4}''$  distant from  $MX$ .

From  $S$  draw  $SQ$  perpendicular to  $MX$  and produce  $QS$  to any point  $R$ , making  $RQ = 2\frac{3}{4}''$ .

Through  $R$  draw  $ARB$  parallel to  $MX$ .

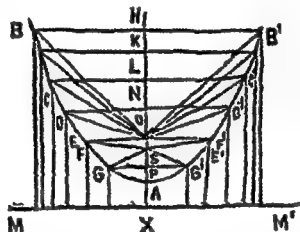
With the centre  $S$  and radius  $= 2\frac{3}{4}"$  draw an arc cutting  $AB$  at the points  $O$  and  $P$

Join  $SO$  and  $SP$ . From  $O$  and  $P$  draw  $OC$  and  $PD$  perpendiculars to  $MX$

Then  $O$  and  $P$  are the two points which are  $2\frac{3}{4}"$  distant from  $S$ , and also  $2\frac{3}{4}"$  distant from  $MX$  ( $\because SO = 2\frac{3}{4}" = QR = OC$ )

Q. E. F.

16. Let  $MX$  be a given straight line and  $S$  a given point.



It is required to find a series of points equidistant from the given point  $S$  and the given straight line  $MX$ , and to draw a curve (freehand) passing through all the points so found.

From  $S$  draw  $SX$  perpendicular to  $MX$  and bisect it at  $A$ .

Then  $A$  is a point equidistant from  $S$  and  $MX$ .

Produce  $MX$  beyond  $X$  to any point  $M'$ .

Produce  $XS$  beyond  $S$  and take several points  $H, K, L, N, O, P, \dots$  on it.

Through  $H, K, L, N, O, P, \dots$  draw parallels to  $MXM'$ .

With the centre  $S$  and radius  $= SX$  draw an arc cutting the parallel through  $H$  at the points  $B, B'$ .

With the centre  $S$  and radius  $= KX$  draw an arc cutting the parallel through  $K$  at  $C, C'$ .

With the centre  $S$  and radius  $= LX$  draw an arc cutting the parallel through  $L$  at  $DD'$ ,

With the centre  $S$  and radius  $= NX$  draw an arc cutting the parallel through  $N$  at  $E, E'$ .

With the centre  $S$  and radius  $= OX$  draw an arc cutting the parallel through  $O$  at  $F, F'$ .

With the centre  $S$  and radius  $= PX$  draw an arc cutting the parallel through  $P$  at  $G, G'$

Draw a freehand curve passing through the points  $B, C, D, E, F, G, A, G', F', E', D', C', B'$  thus found as shown in the figure.

The curve so formed is called a Parabola.

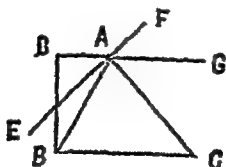
Join  $BS, B'S, CS, C'S, DS, D'S, ES, E'S, FS, F'S, GS, G'S$

From  $B, B', C, C', D, D', E, E', F, F', G, G'$  draw perpendiculars to  $MXM'$ .

Then  $B, B', C, C', D, D', E, E', F, F', G, G'$  are the series of points equidistant from  $S$  and  $MX$  (proved in Ex. 15 on page 95).

Q. E. F.

17. Let  $EF$  be a given straight line.



It is required to construct a triangle of given altitude on a given base having its vertex on the given straight line  $EF$ .

Let  $BC$  represent the given base of the triangle. At  $B$  draw  $BD$  perpendicular to  $BC$  making it equal to the given altitude. From  $D$  draw  $DG$  parallel to  $BC$ .

Then the vertex of the triangle lies on  $DG$ .

Also the vertex lies on the straight line  $EF$  (given)

$\therefore$  the point  $A$  where  $DG$  cuts  $EF$  is the required vertex.

Join  $AB$  and  $AC$

Then  $ABC$  is the required triangle.

Q. E. F.

18 (See figure in Ex. 7 on page 34).

Let  $ABC$  be a triangle.

It is required to find a point equidistant from the three sides of the triangle  $ABC$ .

Bisect the  $\angle ABC$  and  $\angle ACB$  by  $BO$  and  $CO$ , the lines  $BO$  and  $CO$  meeting in  $O$ .

Locus of the points equidistant from  $CB$  and  $CA$  is the line  $CO$  which bisects the  $\angle ACB$ . (Prob. 15)

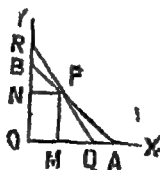
Locus of the points equidistant from  $BA$  and  $BC$  is the line  $BO$  which bisects the  $\angle ABC$ . (Prob 15)

Hence the point  $O$  where these two bisectors meet is equidistant from  $AB$ ,  $AC$  and  $BC$

Q. E. F.

19 Let two straight lines  $OX$ ,  $OY$  cut at right angles at  $O$ , and let  $Q$ ,  $R$  be two points in  $OX$  and  $OY$  respectively.

(2) It is required to plot the locus of the middle point of  $QR$  when  $OQ + OR = \text{constant}$ .



Join  $QR$  and bisect it at  $P$ .

Here the line  $QR$  moves through all positions in which  $OQ + OR$  is constant, and  $P$  is its middle point. Therefore one position of  $P$ , when  $QR$  falls along  $OX$ , is at  $A$  in  $OX$ .

When QR (while moving) falls along OX in such a way that  $OQ + OR$  is constant, there is a line in OX which represents the position of QR. This line is equal to  $OQ + OR$ .

But A representing the position of P, the middle point of QR, is the middle point of this line.

$$\therefore OA = \frac{1}{2} (OQ + OR) = \text{constant.}$$

Hence A is a fixed point.

From P draw PM perpendicular to OX, and PN perpendicular to OY.

Join AP and produce it beyond P to meet OY in B.

In the  $\triangle ROQ$ , P is the middle point of RQ, and PM is parallel to OR, proved in Ex. 2 on page 41)

$\therefore M$  is the middle point of OQ (proved in Ex. 1 on page 64)

Since P, M are the middle points of RQ, OQ

$$\therefore PM = \frac{1}{2} \text{ of } RO \text{ (proved in Ex. 3 on page 64)}$$

Similarly,  $PN = \frac{1}{2} \text{ of } OQ$

$$\therefore PM + PN = \frac{1}{2} (RO + OQ) = OA$$

But  $OA = OM + MA$ , and  $PN = OM$  (Theor. 21)

$$\therefore PM + PN = OM + MA = PN + MA$$

$$\therefore PM = MA$$

$$\therefore \text{the } \angle MPA = \text{the } \angle MAP \text{ (Theor. 5)}$$

But the  $\angle AMP$  is a rt. angle, hence each of the  $\angle$ 's MPA, MAP is half a rt. angle.

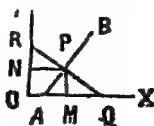
Thus A being a fixed point, and  $\angle MAP$  a constant angle, AB is a fixed line.

$\therefore$  In every position of QR the middle point P lies on the straight line APB which makes with OX an angle equal to half a rt. angle.

But since the points Q, R always lie on OX and OY, therefore AB lying between OX and OY is the required locus as shown in the figure.



(ii) It is required to plot the locus of the middle point of  $QR$  when  $OQ - OR$  is constant.



Join  $QR$  and bisect it at  $P$ .

Here the line  $QR$  moves through all positions in which  $OQ - OR$  is constant, and  $P$  is its middle point. Therefore one position of  $P$  when  $QR$  falls along  $OX$ , is at  $A$  in  $OX$ .

When  $QR$  (while moving) falls along  $OX$  in such a way that  $OQ - OR$  is constant, there is a line in  $OX$  which represents the position of  $QR$ . This line is equal to  $OQ - OR$ .

But  $A$  representing the position of  $P$ , the middle point of  $QR$ , is the middle point of this line,

$$\therefore OA = \frac{1}{2} (OQ - OR) = \text{constant.}$$

Hence  $A$  is a fixed point.

From  $P$  draw  $PM$  perpendicular to  $OX$ , and  $PN$  perpendicular to  $OY$ .

Join  $AP$  and produce it beyond  $P$  to any point  $B$

In the  $\triangle ROQ$   $P$  is the middle point of  $RQ$ , and  $PM, RO$  are parallel (proved in Ex. 2 on page 41).

$\therefore M$  is the middle point of  $OQ$  (proved in Ex. 1 on page 64)

Since  $P, M$  are middle points of  $RQ, OQ$ ,

$\therefore PM$  is  $\frac{1}{2}$  of  $RO$  (proved in Ex. 3 on page 64)

Similarly,  $PN = \frac{1}{2}$  of  $OQ$

$$\therefore PN - PM = \frac{1}{2} (OQ - OR) = OA.$$

But  $OA = OM - AM$ , and  $OM = PN$

$$\therefore PN - PM = OM - AM = PN - AM$$

$$\therefore PM = AM$$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle MPA = \text{the } \angle MAP$  (Theor. 5)

But the  $\angle AMP$  is a rt angle, hence each of the  $\angle^s MPA, MAP$  is half a rt. angle.

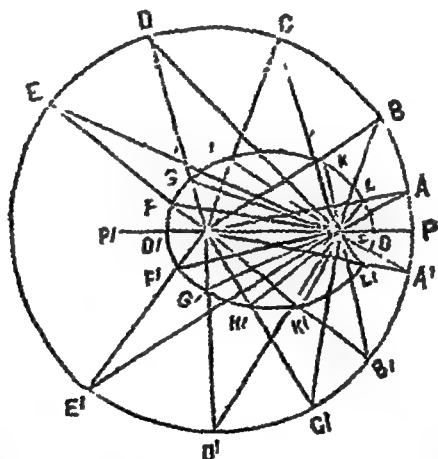
Thus  $A$  being a fixed point, and the  $\angle MAP$  a constant angle,  $AB$  is a fixed line

$\therefore$  in every position of  $QR$ , the middle point  $P$  lies on the straight line  $APB$  which makes with  $OX$  an angle equal to half a rt. angle.

But since the points  $Q, R$  always lie on  $OX$  and  $OY$  therefore  $AB$  lying between  $OX$  and  $OY$  is the required locus as shown in the figure.

20 (2) Let  $S, S'$  be two fixed points.

It is required to find a series of points  $P$  such that  $SP + S'P = 3.5''$ .



With the centre  $S$  and radius  $= 3.5''$  draw a circle.

Join  $SS'$  and produce it beyond  $S'$  to meet the circumference of the circle in  $P$ . Bisect  $S'P$  at  $O$ . Then  $O$  is a point on the curve.

Produce  $S'S$  beyond  $S$  to a point  $P'$  making  $SP' = S'P$ . Bisect  $SP'$  at  $O'$ . Then  $O'$  is another point on the curve.

Take any number of points E,D,C,B,A,A',B',C',D',E',..... on the circumference of the circle.

Join SE, S'E, SD, S'D, SC, S'C, SB, S'B, SA, S'A, SA', S'A', SB', S'B', SC', S'C', SD', S'D', SE', S'E', .....

At S' make the  $\angle ES'F =$  the  $\angle SFS'$  the arm S'F meeting SE in F.

At S' make the  $\angle DS'G =$  the  $\angle SDS'$  the arm S'G meeting SD in G.

At S' make the  $\angle CS'H =$  the  $\angle SCS'$  the arm S'H meeting SC in H.

At S' make the  $\angle BS'K =$  the  $\angle SBS'$  the arm S'K meeting SB in K.

At S' make the  $\angle AS'L =$  the  $\angle SAS'$  the arm S'L meeting SA in L.

At S' make the  $\angle A'S'L' =$  the  $\angle SA'S'$  the arm S'L' meeting SA' in L'.

At S' make the  $\angle B'S'K' =$  the  $\angle SB'S'$  the arm S'K' meeting SB' in K'.

At S' make the  $\angle C'S'H' =$  the  $\angle SC'S'$  the arm S'K' meeting SC' in H'.

At S' make the  $\angle D'S'G' =$  the  $\angle SD'S'$  the arm S'G' meeting SD' in G'.

At S' make the  $\angle E'S'F' =$  the  $\angle SE'S'$  the arm S'F' meeting SE' in F'.

Draw a freehand curve passing through the points F,G,H,K,L,O,L',K',H',G',F',O' thus found as shown in the figure.

The curve so formed is called an Ellipse.

$S'O = OP$ ,  $SO' = O'P'$  and  $S'P = SP'$

$\therefore SO + S'O = SO + OP = SP = 3.5''$

Also  $S'O' + SO' = SS' + SO' + O'P' = SS' + SP' = SS' + S'P = SP = 3.5''$

$\therefore Q$  and  $O'$  are the points on the locus.

Because the  $\angle S'AL = \text{the } \angle AS'L$   
 $\therefore AL = S'L$  (Theor. 6)

$\therefore SL + S'L = SL + LA = SA = 3.5''$

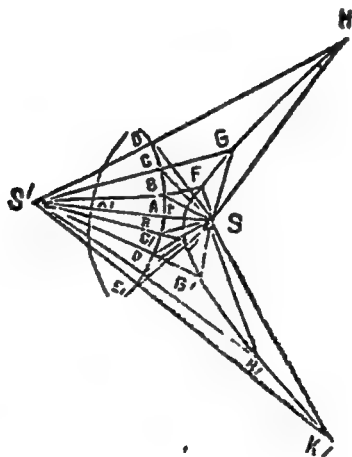
$\therefore L$  is a point on the locus.

Similarly, it can be proved that  $K, H, G, F, F', G', H', K', L'$  are points on the locus.

Q. E. F.

(ii) Let  $S, S'$  be two fixed points.

It is required to find a series of points  $P$  such that  $SP = 1.5''$ .



With the centre  $S'$  and radius  $= 1.5''$  draw an arc.

Join  $SS'$  cutting the arc at  $A$ , bisect  $AS$ , then the middle point lies on the curve.

Take any number of points  $D, C, B, B', C', D', E', \dots$

Join  $S'D, SD, S'C, SC, S'B, SB, S'B', SB', S'C', SC', S'D', SD', S'E', SE', \dots$

Produce  $S'D$  beyond  $D$ ,  $S'C$  beyond  $C$ ,  $S'B$  beyond  $B$ ,  $S'B'$  beyond  $B'$ ,  $S'C'$  beyond  $C'$ ,  $S'D'$  beyond  $D'$ ,  $S'E'$  beyond  $E'$ ,  $\dots$

At S make the  $\angle DSH =$  the  $\angle SDH$  the arm SH meeting S'D produced in H.

At S make the  $\angle CSG =$  the  $\angle SCG$  the arm SG meeting S'C produced in G.

At S make the  $\angle BSF =$  the  $\angle SBF$  the arm SF meeting S'B produced in F.

At S make the  $\angle B'SF' =$  the  $\angle SB'F'$  the arm SF' meeting S'B' produced in F'.

At S make the  $\angle C'SG' =$  the  $\angle SC'G'$  the arm SG' meeting S'C' produced in G'.

At S make the  $\angle D'SH' =$  the  $\angle SD'H'$  the arm SH' meeting S'D' produced in H'.

At S make the  $\angle E'SK' =$  the  $\angle SE'K'$  the arm SK' meeting S'E' produced in K'.

Draw a freehand curve passing through the points H, G, F, the middle point of AS, F', G', H', K', thus found as shown in the figure.

Similarly, with centre S and radius  $= 1.5''$  draw an arc cutting SS' at A'. By taking any number of points on this arc, and determining the corresponding points on the locus (by the method given above) a similar curve can be drawn on the other side of AA'.

These two branches of the so formed curve form what is called a Hyperbola.

Suppose P represents the middle point of AS,

Then  $S'P - SP = S'P - AP = S'A = 1.5''$ .

$\therefore$  P is a point on the curve

Because the  $\angle FBS =$  the  $\angle FSB$

$\therefore FB = FS$  (Theor. 6)

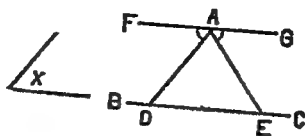
$\therefore S'F - SF = S'F - FB = S'B = 1.5''$

$\therefore$  F is a point on the locus.

Similarly, it can be proved that H, G, F', G', H', K', re points on the locus

Q. E. F.

1. Let  $A$  be a given point,  $X$  a given angle and  $BC$  a given straight line.



It is required to draw a straight line from  $A$  to make with  $BC$  an angle equal to the given angle  $X$ .

**Construction**—Through  $A$  draw a straight line  $FAG$  parallel to  $BC$ . At  $A$  make the angles  $FAD$  and  $GAE$  each equal to the given angle  $X$ , the arms  $AD$  and  $AE$  meeting  $BC$  in  $D$  and  $E$ .

Then  $AD$  and  $AE$  are the required lines.

**Proof**—Because  $FA$  and  $DC$  are parallel, and  $AD$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle FAD =$  the alternate  $\angle ADC$  (Theor. 14)

But the  $\angle FAD =$  the  $\angle X$ ,  $\therefore$  the  $\angle ADC =$  the  $\angle X$ .

Again, because  $GA$  and  $EB$  are parallel, and  $AE$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle GAE =$  the alternate  $\angle AEB$  (Theor. 14)

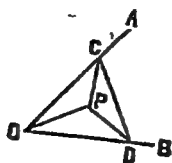
But the  $\angle GAE =$  the  $\angle X$ ;  $\therefore$  the  $\angle AEB =$  the  $\angle X$ ,

$\therefore AD$  and  $AE$  are the required lines.

Two lines can be drawn from the given point  $A$  making with  $BC$  angles each equal to the given angle  $X$ .

2. Let  $AOB$  be a given angle.

Q. E. F.



It is required to draw the bisector of the angle  $\angle AOB$ , without using the vertex  $O$  in the construction.

**Construction**—Take any point  $C$  in  $OA$ , and any point  $D$  in  $OB$ . Join  $CD$ .

Bisect the  $\angle ODC$  and  $\angle OCD$  by  $DP$ ,  $CP$ , the arms  $DP$ ,  $CP$  meeting in  $P$ . Join  $PO$ .

Then  $PO$  is the bisector of the  $\angle AOB$ .

**Proof.**—Because  $CP$  bisects the  $\angle OCD$

$\therefore CP$  is the locus of points equidistant from  $CO$  and  $CD$  (Prob. 15)

Again, because  $DP$  bisects the  $\angle ODC$

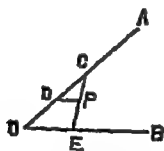
$\therefore DP$  is the locus of points equidistant from  $DO$  and  $DC$  (Prob. 15)

$\therefore P$  is on the locus of points equidistant from  $OC$  and  $OD$  (proved in Prop. II on page 96)

That is,  $OP$  is the bisector of the  $\angle COD$  or  $\angle AOB$

Q. E. F.

3 Let  $P$  be a given point within the  $\angle AOB$ .



It is required to draw through  $P$  a straight line terminated by  $OA$ , and  $OB$ , and bisected at  $P$

**Construction.**—From  $P$  draw  $PD$  parallel to  $OB$  meeting  $OA$  in  $D$ .

From  $DA$  cut off  $DC = OD$ . Join  $CP$  and produce it to meet  $OB$  in  $E$

Then  $CE$  is the required straight line.

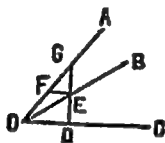
**Proof**—Because  $D$  is the middle point of  $OC$  (by construction) and  $DP$  is parallel to  $OE$ .

$\therefore$  P is the middle point of CE (proved in Ex. 1 on page 64).

Thus, through P the straight line CE is drawn terminated by OA and OB, and bisected at P.

Q. E. F.

4. Let OA, OB, OC be three straight lines meeting at O.



It is required to draw a transversal terminated by OA and OC and bisected by OB.

Construction.—Take any point E in OB.

From E draw EF parallel to OC meeting OA in F.

From FA cut off  $FG = OF$

Join GE and produce it to meet OC in D.

Then GD is the required straight line.

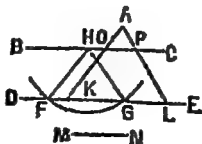
Proof.—Because F is the middle point of OG (by construction) and FE is parallel to OD

$\therefore$  E is the middle point of GD (proved in Ex. 1 on page 64)

Thus GD is the transversal terminated by OA and OC, and bisected by OB at E

Q. E. F.

5. Let MN be a given straight line, A a given point and BC, DE two given parallel straight lines.





It is required to draw through the given point A a straight line so that the part intercepted between the two given parallels BC and DE may be of given length MN.

Construction — Take any point H in BC.

With the centre H and radius = MN draw an arc cutting DE at F and G. Join HF and HG.

From A draw AK parallel to HF cutting BC in O and meeting DE in K.

From A draw AL parallel to HG cutting BC in P and meeting DE in L.

Then AOK and APL are the required lines.

Proof—Because HO is parallel to FK (given), and HF is parallel to OK (by construction)

$\therefore$  the figure HEKO is a parallelogram

$\therefore$  HF = OK (Theor. 21)

Again, because HG is parallel to PL (by construction) and HP is parallel to GL (given)

$\therefore$  the figure HGLP is a parallelogram

$\therefore$  HG = PL (Theor. 21)

But HF = HG = MN (by construction)

$\therefore$  OK = PL = MN.

$\therefore$  the straight lines AOK and APL have their parts OK and PL intercepted between the parallels BC and DE each equal to MN.

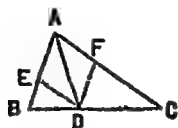
Q. E. F.

This problem admits of two solutions when the given length MN is greater than the distance of P from the line DE (i.e., the perpendicular from P to DE), as shown in the figure.

This problem admits of only one solution when the given length MN is equal to the distance of P from the line DE.

This problem is impossible when the given length  $MN$  is less than the distance of  $P$  from the line  $DE$ .

6. Let  $ABC$  be a triangle.



It is required to inscribe a rhombus in the triangle  $ABC$  having one of its angles coinciding with the angle  $A$ .

Construction—Bisect the  $\angle BAC$  by  $AD$  to meet  $BC$  in  $D$

Through  $D$  draw  $DE$  parallel to  $AC$  meeting  $AB$  in  $E$ ; also draw  $DF$  parallel to  $AB$  meeting  $AC$  in  $F$ .

Then  $AEDF$  is the required rhombus.

Proof—Because  $AF$  and  $ED$  are parallel, also  $AE$  and  $DF$  are parallel

$\therefore$  the figure  $AEDF$  is a parallelogram

$\therefore AE = DF$ , and  $AF = ED$  (Theor 21)

Because  $AF$  and  $ED$  are parallel and  $AD$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle FAD =$  the alternate  $\angle ADE$  (Theor 14).

But the  $\angle EAD =$  the  $\angle FAD$  (by construction)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle ADE =$  the  $\angle EAD$

$\therefore ED = EA$  (Theor. 6)

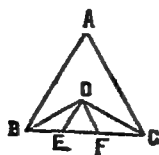
But  $AE = DF$  and  $AF = ED$

$\therefore AE = DF = ED = AF$ .

$\therefore$  the figure  $AEDF$  is a rhombus.

Q. E. F.

7. Let  $BC$  be a given straight line.



It is required to use the properties of an equilateral triangle to trisect the given straight line  $BC$ .

**Construction**—With the centres  $B$  and  $C$ , and radius  $=BC$  draw two arcs cutting at  $A$ . Join  $AB$  and  $AC$ . Then  $ABC$  is an equilateral triangle.

$\therefore$  each of its angles  $ABC$ ,  $ACB$  and  $BAC=60^\circ$ . Bisect the  $\angle ABC$  by  $BD$ ; also bisect the  $\angle ACB$  by  $CD$ , the bisector  $CD$  meeting  $BD$  in  $D$ .

From  $D$  draw  $DE$  parallel to  $AB$  to meet  $BC$  in  $E$ . From  $D$  draw  $DF$  parallel to  $AC$  to meet  $BC$  in  $F$ .

Then the line  $BC$  is trisected at  $E$  and  $F$ .

**-Proof**—Because  $AB$  and  $DE$  are parallel, and  $BD$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle BDE =$  the alternate  $\angle ABD$  (Theor. 14)

But the  $\angle ABD =$  the  $\angle DBE$  (by construction)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle DBE =$  the  $\angle BDE$

$\therefore BE = DE$  (Theor. 6)

Again, because  $DF$  and  $AC$  are parallel, and  $DC$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle DCA =$  the alternate  $\angle CDF$  (Theor. 14)

But the  $\angle ACD =$  the  $\angle DCF$  (by construction)

$\therefore$  the  $\angle CDF =$  the  $\angle DCF$

$\therefore DF = CF$  (Theor. 6)

Again, because  $DE$  and  $AB$  are parallel, and  $BF$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle DEF =$  the  $\angle ABF$  (Theor. 14)  $= 60^\circ$

Again, because  $DF$  and  $AC$  are parallel, and  $EC$  meets them

$\therefore$  the  $\angle DFE =$  the  $\angle ACE$  (Theor. 14)  $= 60^\circ$

$\therefore$  the  $\angle EDF = 180^\circ - (60^\circ + 60^\circ) = 180^\circ - 120^\circ = 60^\circ$   
(Theor 16 Inf 1)

$\therefore DEF$  is an equilateral triangle (Cor. Theor. 6)

$$\therefore DE = EF = DF$$

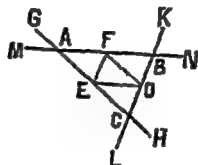
But  $BE = DE$  and  $CF = DF$  (proved)

$$\therefore BE = EF = FC.$$

That is,  $BC$  is trisected at  $E$  and  $F$ .

**Q. E. F.**

8 (2) Let  $D, E, F$  be the middle points of the three sides of a triangle.



It is required to construct the triangle.

**Construction**—Join  $DE$ ,  $EF$  and  $FD$ .

Through  $D$  draw  $LDK$  parallel to  $EF$ .

Through  $E$  draw  $HEG$  parallel to  $DF$  cutting  $LK$  at  $C$ .

Through  $F$  draw  $MFN$  parallel to  $DE$  cutting  $LK$  at  $B$  and  $HG$  at  $A$ .

Then  $ABC$  is the required triangle.

**Proof**—Because  $DB$  is parallel to  $EF$ , and  $DE$  is parallel to  $BF$

$\therefore DEFB$  is a parallelogram

$\therefore DB = EF$  (Theor 21)

Similarly,  $CDFE$  is a parallelogram

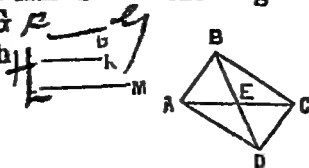
$\therefore CD = EF$  (Theor 21)

$\therefore CD = DB$ , i.e.,  $D$  is the middle point of  $BC$

Similarly, it can be proved that  $E$  is the middle point of  $AC$  and  $F$  is the middle point of  $AB$ .

**Q. E. F.**

(ii) Let  $HK$  and  $LM$  denote the lengths of two sides of a triangle, and  $FG$  the length of the median, which bisects the third side.



It is required to construct the triangle

**Construction**—Take a straight line  $BD$  equal to  $2\ FG$ . With centres  $B$  and  $D$ , and radii equal to  $HK$  and  $LM$  respectively draw two arcs cutting at  $A$ . Join  $AB$

Bisect  $BD$  at  $E$ . Join  $AE$  and produce it to  $C$  making  $EC = AE$ . Join  $BC$

Then  $\triangle ABC$  is the required triangle.

Join  $AD$ .

**Proof**—In the two  $\triangle^s AED$  and  $BEC$

Because  $\begin{cases} AE = EC \text{ (by construction)} \\ DE = EB \text{ by construction} \\ \text{and the } \angle AED = \text{the } \angle BEC \text{ (Theor. 3)} \end{cases}$

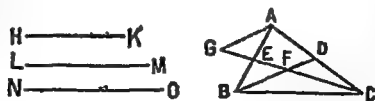
$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

so that,  $AD = BC = LM$

$AB = HK$ , and  $BE = \frac{1}{2} BD = FG$ .

Q. E. F.

(iii) Let  $NO$  denote the length of one side of a triangle, and  $HK$ ,  $LM$  the medians which bisect the other two sides.



It is required to construct a triangle

**Construction**—Take a straight line  $BC = NO$ .

With the centres  $B$  and  $C$ , and radii equal to  $\frac{2}{3} HK$  and  $\frac{2}{3} LM$  respectively draw two arcs cutting at  $F$ . Join  $BF$  and  $CF$ .

Produce CF to E making  $FE = \frac{1}{2} FC$ . Join BE and produce it to A making  $EA = BE$ . Join AC.

Then ABC is the required triangle.

Produce BF to meet AC in D. Also produce FE to G making  $EG = EF$ . Join GA.

Proof—In the two  $\triangle^s$  AEG and BEF

Because  $\begin{cases} AE = BE \text{ (by construction)} \\ GE = EF \text{ (by construction)} \\ \text{and the } \angle AEG = \text{the } \angle BEF \text{ (Theor. 3)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

so that,  $AG = FB$ , and the  $\angle GAE = \text{the } \angle EBF$

But the  $\angle^s$  GAE and EBF are alternate angles

$\therefore$  GA and FB are parallel (Theor. 13)

Because  $EF = EG$  and  $EF = \frac{1}{2} FC$  (by construction)

$\therefore EF + EG$  or  $FG = FC$

Now, in the  $\triangle AGC$ , F is the middle point of GC, and FD is parallel to GA

$\therefore$  D is the middle of AC (proved in Ex. 1 on page 64).

Because F and D are the middle points of GC and AC

$\therefore FD = \frac{1}{2} GA$  (proved in Ex. 3 on page 64)  $= \frac{1}{2} BF$

$FC = \frac{2}{3} LM$ , and  $EF = \frac{1}{2} FC$

$\therefore EF = \frac{1}{3} LM$ .

$\therefore EC = CF + FE = \frac{2}{3} LM + \frac{1}{3} LM = LM$ .

Also  $BF = \frac{2}{3} HK$ , and  $FD = \frac{1}{2} BF$

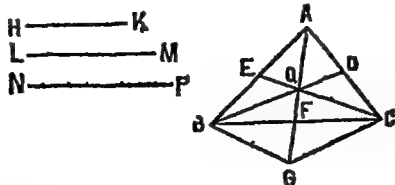
$\therefore FD = \frac{1}{3} HK$

$\therefore BD = BF + FD = \frac{2}{3} HK + \frac{1}{3} HK = HK$ .

$\therefore$  BD and EC are the medians to AC and AB and their lengths are equal to HK and LM respectively.

$\therefore$  ABC is the required triangle.

(iv) Let  $HK$ ,  $LM$ ,  $NP$  be the lengths of the three medians of a triangle.



It is required to construct the triangle.

**Construction**—Take a straight line  $AO = \frac{2}{3} HK$ , and produce it to  $G$  making  $OG = AO$ .

With centres  $O$  and  $G$ , and radii equal to  $\frac{2}{3} NP$  and  $\frac{2}{3} LM$  respectively draw two arcs cutting at  $B$ . Join  $BO$  and  $BG$ .

Bisect  $OG$  at  $F$ . Join  $BF$  and produce it to  $C$  making  $FC = BF$ . Join  $AB$  and  $AC$ .

Then  $ABC$  is the required triangle

Join  $CO$  and produce it to meet  $AB$  in  $E$ .

Produce  $BO$  to meet  $AC$  in  $D$ . Join  $GC$ .

**Proof.**—Because  $AO = \frac{2}{3} HK$ , and  $OF = \frac{1}{2} OG = \frac{1}{2} AO$

$$\therefore OF = \frac{1}{3} HK$$

$$\therefore AF = AO + OF = \frac{2}{3} HK + \frac{1}{3} HK = HK$$

also  $F$  is the middle point of  $BC$  (by construction)

$\therefore AF$  is the median to  $BC$ .

Now in the two  $\triangle^s OBF$  and  $FGC$

Because  $\begin{cases} OF = FG \text{ (by construction)} \\ BF = FC \text{ (by construction)} \\ \text{and the } \angle OFB = \text{the } \angle GFC \text{ (Theor. 3)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

so that,  $BO = CG$ , and the  $\angle BOE = \text{the } \angle FGC$

But the  $\angle^s BOF$  and  $FGC$  are alternate angles

$\therefore BO$  and  $CG$  are parallel (Theor. 13)

Again, in the two  $\triangle^s OFC$  and  $BFG$

Because  $\begin{cases} OF = FG \text{ (by construction)} \\ FC = BF \text{ (by construction)} \\ \text{and the } \angle OFC = \text{the } \angle BFG \text{ (Theor. 3)} \end{cases}$

$\therefore$  two  $\triangle^s$  are equal in all respects (Theor. 4)

so that,  $OC = BG$  and the  $\angle FOC = \text{the } \angle BGF$ .

But the  $\angle^s FOC$  and  $BGF$  are alternate angles

$\therefore OC$  and  $BG$  are parallel (Theor. 13)

In the  $\triangle AGC$ ,  $O$  is the middle point of  $AG$  (by construction), and  $OD$  is parallel to  $GC$  (proved)

$\therefore D$  is the middle point of  $AC$  (proved in Ex. 1 on page 64)

Since  $O$  and  $D$  are the middle points of  $AG$  and  $AC$

$\therefore OD = \frac{1}{2}$  of  $GC$  (proved in Ex. 3 on page 64)

But  $GC = BO$  (proved), therefore  $OD = \frac{1}{2}$  of  $BO$ .

Because  $BO = \frac{2}{3} NP$  and  $OD = \frac{1}{2} BO$

$\therefore OD = \frac{1}{3} NP$

$\therefore BD = BO + OD = \frac{2}{3} NP + \frac{1}{3} NP = NP$

and  $D$  is the middle point of  $AC$  (proved)

$\therefore BD$  is the median to  $AC$ .

In the  $\triangle ABG$ ,  $O$  is the middle point of  $AG$  (by construction), and  $OE$  is parallel to  $BG$  (proved)

$\therefore E$  is the middle point of  $AB$  (proved in Ex. 1 on page 64)

Since  $O$  and  $E$  are the middle points of  $AG$  and  $AB$

$\therefore OE = \frac{1}{2}$  of  $BG$  (proved in Ex. 3 on page 64)

But  $BG = OC$  (proved), therefore  $OE = \frac{1}{2}$  of  $OC$

$BG = \frac{2}{3} LM$  (by construction), therefore  $OC = \frac{2}{3} LM$

Because  $CO = \frac{2}{3} LM$ , and  $OE = \frac{1}{2} OC$



$$\therefore OE = \frac{1}{3} LM$$

$$\therefore CE = CO + OE = \frac{2}{3} LM + \frac{1}{3} LM = LM$$

also E is the middle point of AB (proved)

$\therefore$  CE is the median to AB.

Q. E. F.



# **HELP-BOOKS BY J. N. SEN & OTHERS.**

—\*—

		Rs.	a.	p.
1	Notes on Barrow's Senior Reader, With Urdu or Hindi Translation	2	0	0
2	Notes on Barrow's Junior Reader, With Urdu or Hindi Translation	1	4	0
3	Guide to Marsden and Jia Ram's History of India, in Urdu or Hindi...	0	5	0
4	Guide to Geikie's Physical Geography ...	0	5	0
5	Guide to Hill's Physical Geography ...	0	4	0
6	Solution of Hall & Steven's Geo- metry with Neat Diagrams, Pt. I.	0	10	0
7	Do. Pt II ...	0	6	0

—0—

PLY TO —

**Mohendra Nath Sen,**

PUBLISHER,

GEORGE TOWN, Allahabad.

